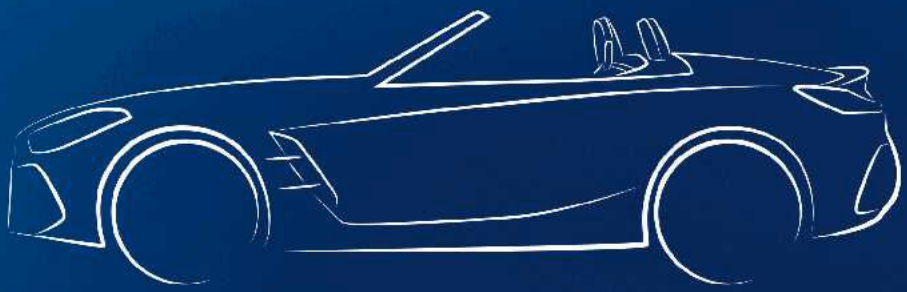
Content

A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW Z4 ROADSTER.



Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6

QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 23

CONTROLS

Dashboard 30
Sensors of the vehicle 35
Operating condition of the vehicle 38
iDrive 42
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 56
General settings 60
Personal settings 64
Connections 70
Opening and closing 79
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 108
Transporting children safely 118
Driving 122
Displays 141
Lights 161
Safety 168
Driving stability control systems 187
Driver assistance systems 191
Driving comfort 225
Climate control 226

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior equipment 240
Storage compartments 248
Cargo area 252

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 256
Saving fuel 260

MOBILITY

Refueling 266
Wheels and tires 268
Engine compartment 297
Operating materials 300
Maintenance 307
Replacing components 309
Breakdown Assistance 313
Vehicle Care 321

REFERENCE

Technical data 328
Appendix 330
Everything from A to Z 332

© 2023 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 VI/23, -
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication is available as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the control display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Manual"

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW such as on technology are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
››...‹‹	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. That is why this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for instance, because of the selected optional equipment or the national-market version.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to the vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applicable in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If the vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might

OwnersManuals2.com

be necessary to adapt the vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having necessary work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs the appropriate work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is not carried out properly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects

OwnersManuals2.com

or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service the vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing the vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. The vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

The vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate the vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt the vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW maintenance system.

  Maintenance, refer to page 307.
- ▷ Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain the vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the

OwnersManuals2.com

vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner such as via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- ▷ Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself.

In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Chassis and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

OwnersManuals2.com

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. This excludes functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties,

OwnersManuals2.com

the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to the driving dynamics and safety systems for a short time: max. 30 seconds, typically less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record the following data, for example:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties such as law enforcement could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

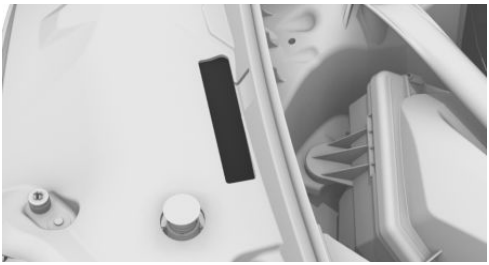
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement that have the special equipment can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that the vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

OwnersManuals2.com

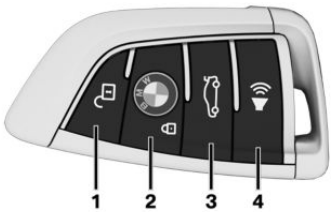
NOTES !

OwnersManuals2.com

Getting in

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Unlocking the trunk lid
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

OwnersManuals2.com

Comfort Access

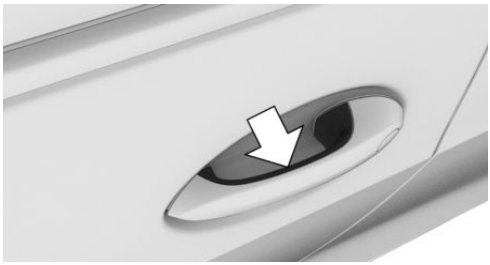
Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

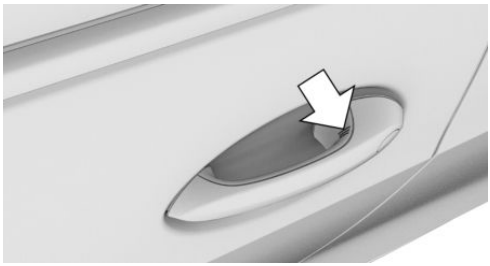
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

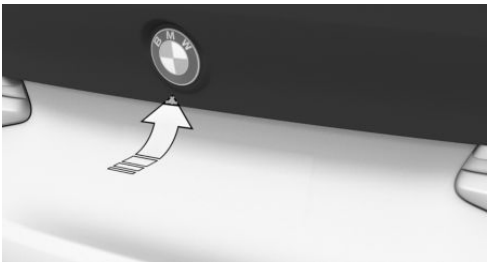
Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

Trunk lid

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the trunk lid.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

Closing

Close the trunk lid manually.

Convertible top

Overview

With manual transmission:

With Steptronic transmission:

OwnersManuals2.com

Convertible top switch

Opening

Push the switch and hold it.

The windows roll down and the convertible top opens while the switch is being pushed.

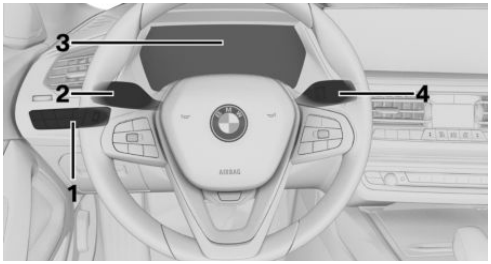
Closing

Pull the switch and hold it.

The windows are lowered, the convertible top is closed, and the windows are raised again while the switch is being pulled.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



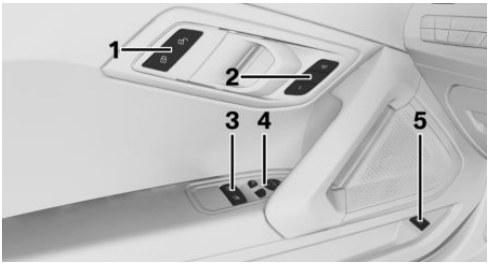
1 Light switch
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

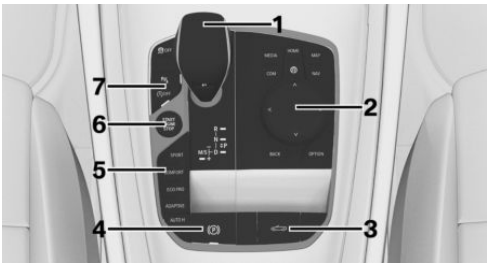
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Driver's door



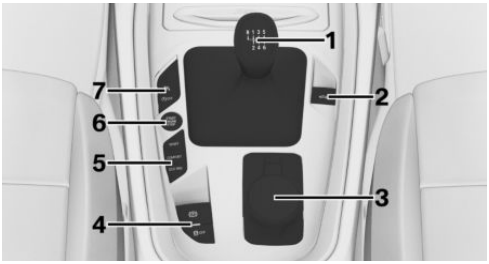
1 Central locking system
2 Seats, comfort features
3 Power windows
4 Exterior mirrors
5 Unlocking the trunk lid

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Convertible top
4 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
5 Driving Experience Control
6 Start/Stop button
7 Assistance systems

OwnersManuals2.com



1 Gearshift lever
2 Convertible top
3 Controller
4 Parking brake
5 Driving Experience Control
6 Start/Stop button
7 Assistance systems

iDrive

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Apps menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Call up the Communication menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Call up the previous display.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Say the command.

Canceling voice control

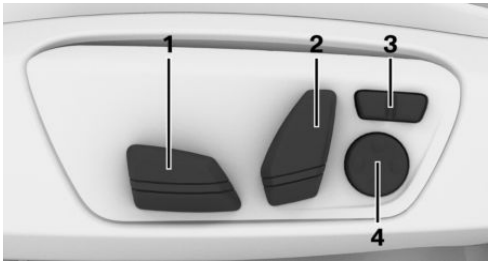
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

OwnersManuals2.com

Set-up and use

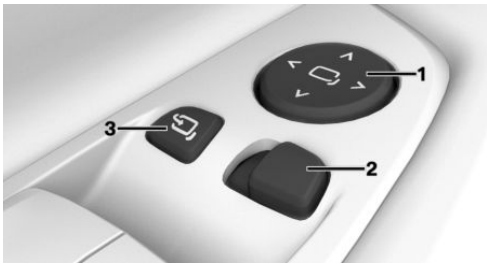
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Electrically adjustable seats



1 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
2 Backrest tilt
3 Backrest width
4 Lumbar support

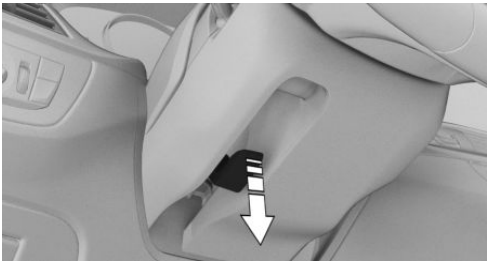
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED in the button illuminates.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

OwnersManuals2.com

Infotainment

Radio

Buttons and functions

Depending on the country and equipment version, the radio has the following buttons.

Button	Function
	Press: turns sound output on/off. Turn: adjusts the volume.
MODE	Change the entertainment source.
⏮ ⏭ / ◁ ▷	Press once: changes the station/track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.
1 ... 7 / 1... 8	Programmable memory buttons.
BAND	Changeover of wave range/satellite radio.
	Menu Apps.

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via the search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   Select point of interest categories from the points of interest menu as needed.

   The search term may be completed automatically in orange lettering.

   Tilt the Controller up to accept the suggested search term.
4. OK Select the icon, if needed.

   A list of the results is displayed.
5. If necessary, "Filter"
6. "Show results"
7. Select the desired entry.
8. If necessary, "Start guidance"

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

▷ Via iDrive:

OwnersManuals2.com

"Accept"

▷ /
Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

▷ Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"

▷ Via touchscreen: tap on the corresponding entry on the control display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay© preparation

Principle

CarPlay allows operation of select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

▷ Compatible iPhone: iPhone 5 or later with iOS 9.3 or later.

▷ Corresponding mobile contract.

▷ Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are turned on the iPhone.

▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.

▷ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
5. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

OwnersManuals2.com

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Manual transmission: step on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission:

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Manual transmission:

- By pressing the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.

Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is depressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Manual transmission

Shifting

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

Reverse gear

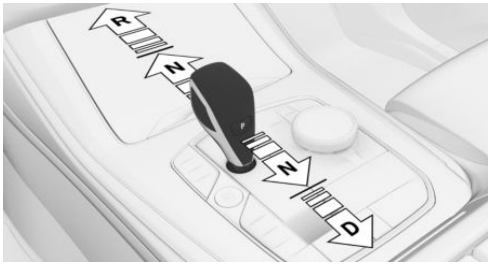
Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

OwnersManuals2.com

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

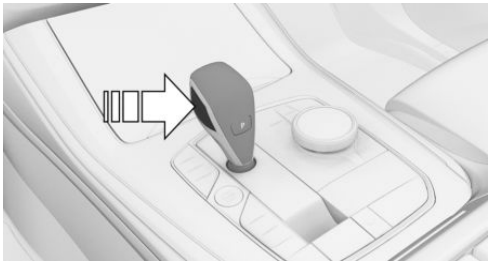


- ▷ Gear position D.
- ▷ Neutral N.
- ▷ Reverse R.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

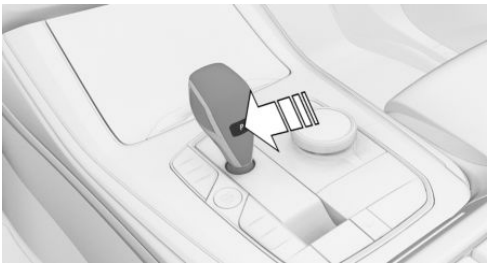
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.

Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

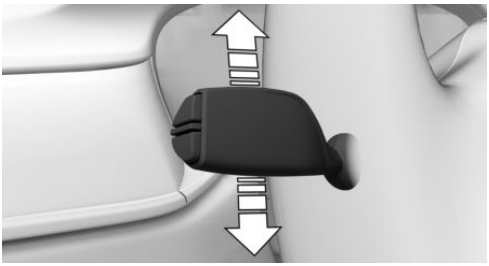


Press button P.

Light and view

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

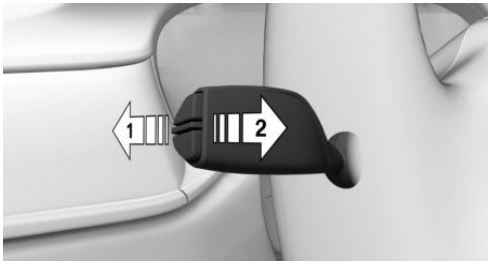
Turn signal



- ▷ Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▷ One-touch signaling: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▷ Brief flashing: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flashing.

OwnersManuals2.com

High beams, headlight flasher



Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams illuminate when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

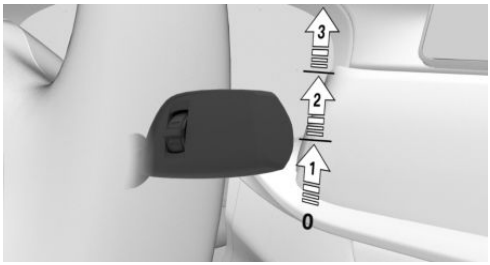
Lights and lighting

Lighting functions

Icon	Function
OFF	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
≡D⊂≡	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

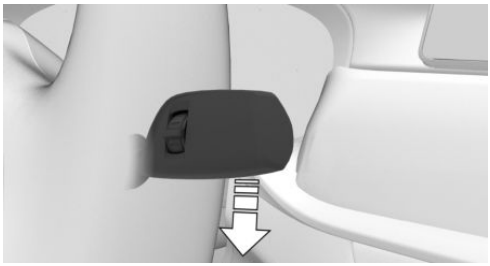
Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe

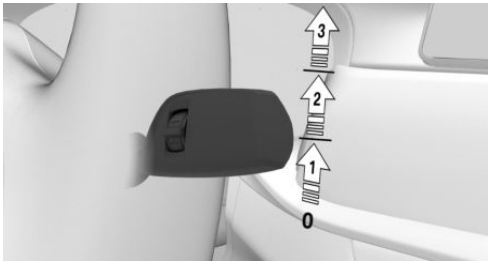


Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turn off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

OwnersManuals2.com

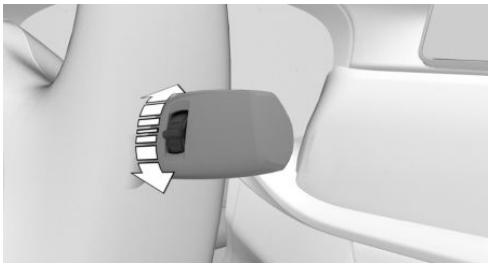
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Activate: press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

Deactivate: press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Temperature.
OFF	Switching off.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Air recirculation mode.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Seat heating.

Automatic climate control with enhanced features

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air recirculation mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.

OwnersManuals2.com

Button	Function
AUTO	AUTO program.
OFF	Air flow, manual. Switching off. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.
	Seat heating.
MENU A/C	Air conditioning. Open Climate menu such as for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, pre-ventilation.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

For the flat tire monitor:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

OwnersManuals2.com

Different messages appear on the control display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the top-up quantity in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. Select the desired service.

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Authorized service center.

OwnersManuals2.com

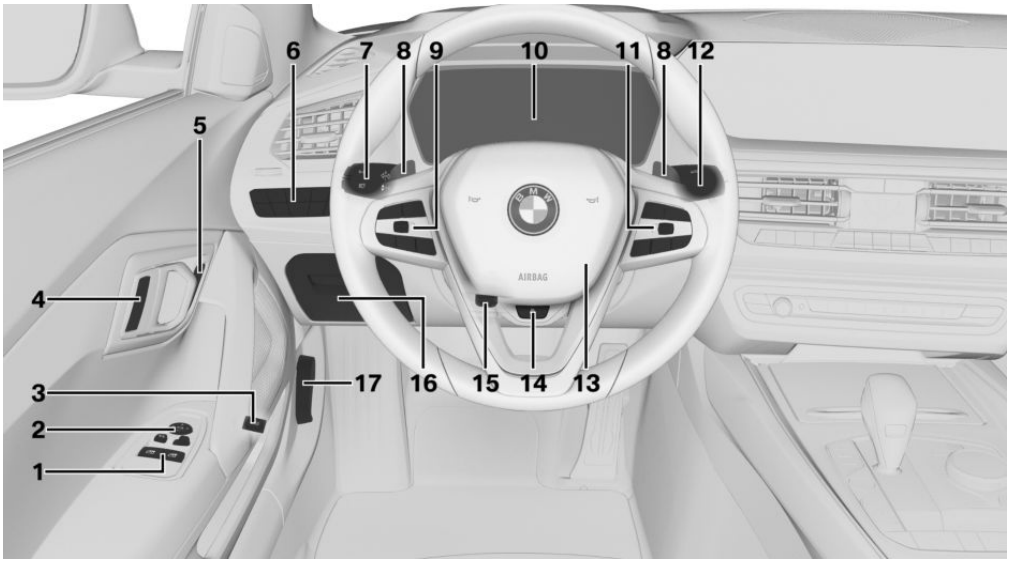
OwnersManuals2.com

Dashboard

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Power windows 100

2 Exterior mirror adjustment button 113

3 Unlocking the trunk lid 93

4 Central locking system

Unlocking 90

Locking 90

5 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 115

6 Lights

OwnersManuals2.com

Light switch 161

Lights off

Daytime driving lights 163

Parking lights 162

Automatic headlight control 161

Adaptive lighting functions 163

Automatic High Beam Assistant 164

Low beams 162

Instrument lighting 165

Right roadside parking light 162

Left roadside parking light 162

7 Turn signal lever

Turn signal 129

High beams, headlight flasher 129

Automatic High Beam Assistant 164

Instrument cluster with enhanced features: widgets 142

Instrument cluster without enhanced features: widgets 143

Trip data 156

8 Shift paddles 133

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Manual Speed Limiter 193

Depending on the equipment:

Cruise Control on/off 195

Active Cruise Control on/off 198

Cruise Control: store the speed

Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed 205

Interrupting Cruise Control

Continuing cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

Cruise Control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 141

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 155

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 50

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 155

12 Wiper lever

OwnersManuals2.com

Wipers 129

Rain sensor 129

Cleaning the windshield and headlights 129

13 Horn, entire surface

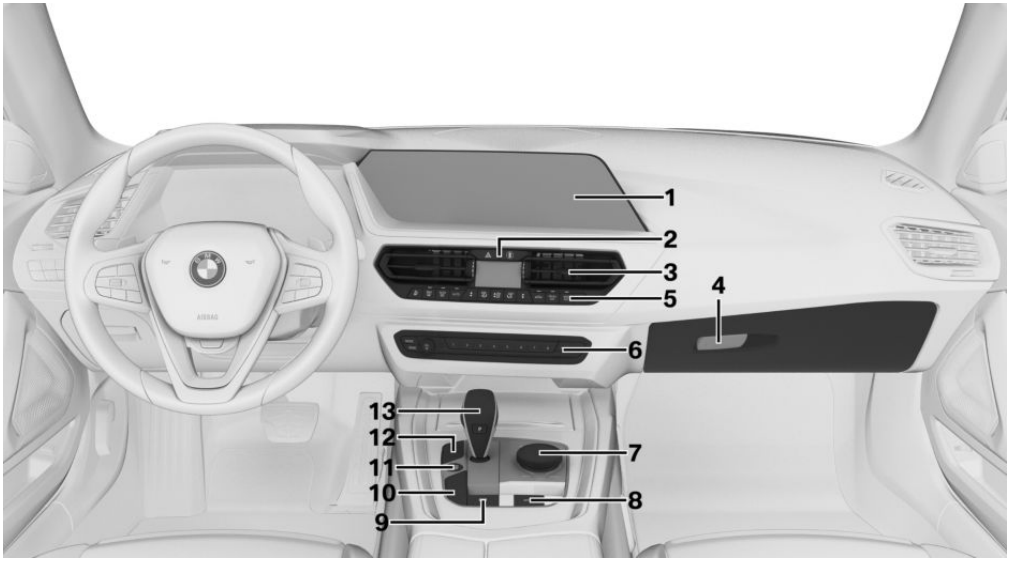
14 Steering wheel heating 115

15 Adjusting the steering wheel 115

16 Fold-out compartment 248

17 Unlocking the hood 298

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control display 45

2 Hazard warning system 313

Intelligent Safety 171

3 Ventilation 235

4 Glove compartment 249

5 Automatic climate control 230

6 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

7 Controller with buttons 45

8 Opening and closing the convertible top 101

OwnersManuals2.com

9 Parking brake 126

Automatic Hold 127

10 Driving Experience Control 138

SPORT drive mode

COMFORT drive mode

ECO PRO drive mode

ADAPTIVE drive mode

11 Turning the drive-ready state on/off 122

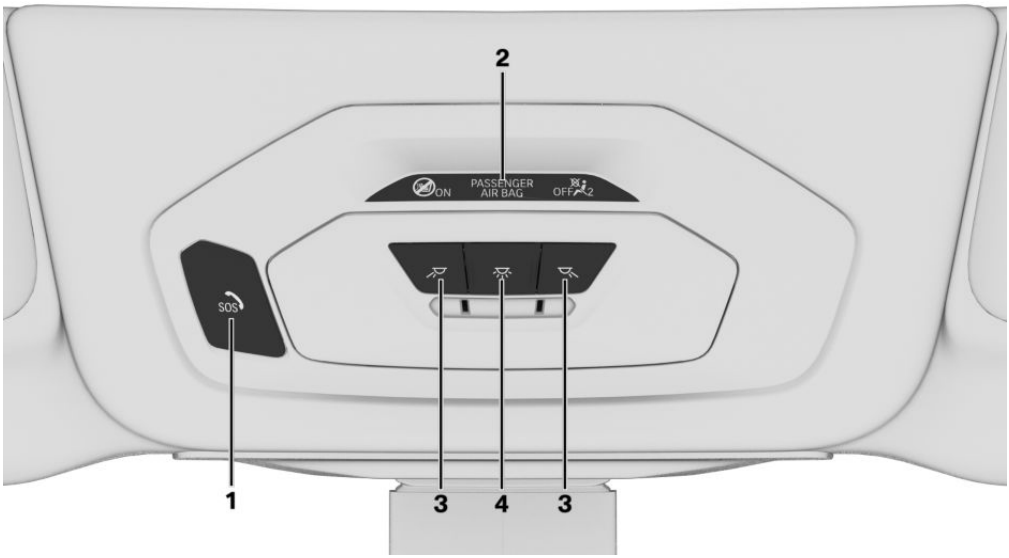
12 Auto Start/Stop function 122

Parking assistance systems 207

Dynamic Stability Control 188

13 Steptronic transmission selector lever 133

In the vicinity of the headliner



1 Emergency Call, SOS 315

2 Indicator light, front passenger airbag 171

OwnersManuals2.com

3 Reading lights 166

4 Interior lights 166

OwnersManuals2.com

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

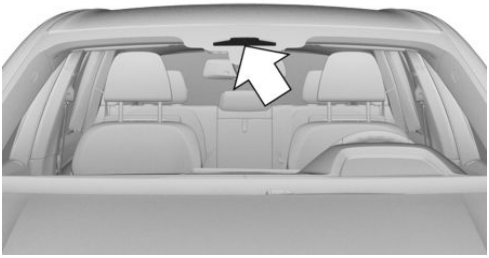
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

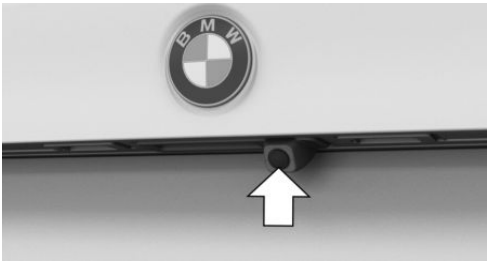
Cameras

Cameras behind the windshield



The cameras behind the windshield are located near the interior mirror.

Rearview camera



The rearview camera is located in the trunk lid handle.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not be fully operational and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.

OwnersManuals2.com

- If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

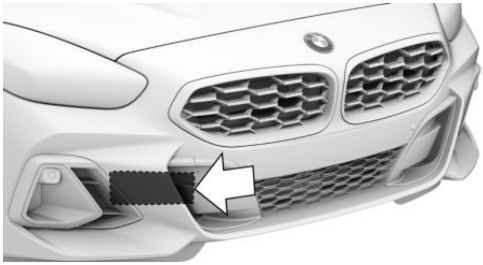
Radar sensors

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle radar sensors and thus also the driver assistance systems can be impaired by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear

The radar sensors are located to the side behind the rear bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

The radar sensors may be restricted or not available in the following situations:

- If sensors are dirty such as due to icing.
- If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

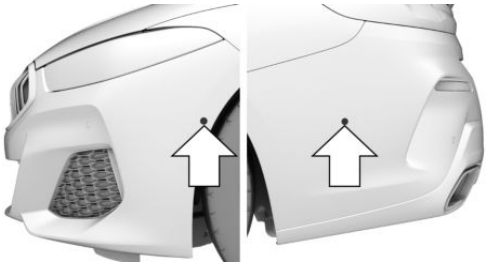
OwnersManuals2.com

Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers

The ultrasonic sensors for Park Distance Control are located in the front and rear bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors for Parking Assistant are located to the side in the front and rear bumpers.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- For objects with fine surfaces or objects like fences, plants, or bushes.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

OwnersManuals2.com

Operating condition of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, the driver and front passenger must exit the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:

Press and hold the button on the radio until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Standby, manual

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via button on the radio

Press the button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Via start/stop button

Press the Start/Stop button. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some functions such as the Dynamic Stability Control can only be used with the drive-ready state turned on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a

OwnersManuals2.com

danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the engine or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Principle

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time.

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, full drive power and the entire speed range may not be available for approx. 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Additional information:

- ▷ Tachometer, refer to page 151.
- ▷ Instrument cluster with enhanced features: Power gauge, refer to page 151.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

OwnersManuals2.com

Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Steptronic transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.

OwnersManuals2.com

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive is the operating concept of the infotainment system and includes a large number of functions.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▷ Via the Controller.
- ▷ Via the control display.
- ▷ Via the touchpad.
- ▷ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

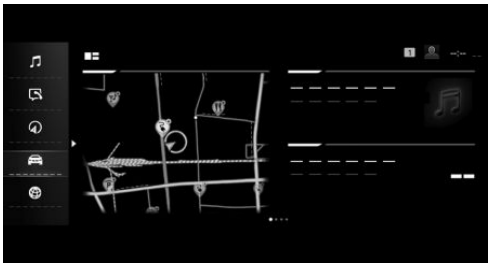
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

♫ All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

OwnersManuals2.com

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when making the destination input, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down for every character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons.

Telephone icons

Icon	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of mobile phone network.
	Network search.
	Mobile phone network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.

OwnersManuals2.com

Icon	Meaning
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment icons

Icon	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	Connected Music with Spotify.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Other icons

Icon	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Notifications.
	Data protection.
	Destination guidance active.
1	Passengers on board.
	Do not disturb.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Overview

1... 8 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1... 8 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the control display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1... 8 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

OwnersManuals2.com

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the control display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

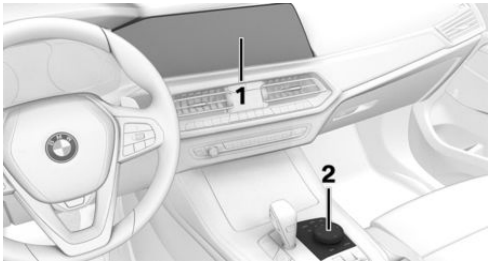
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 at the same time.
2. "OK"

Control display and Controller

Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the control display.

Overview



1 Control display

2 Controller

Control display

Safety information

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable such as mobile phones or loose objects can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Objects in the area in the front of the control display can slip and damage the control display. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the control display.

Switching on/off automatically

The control display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The control display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the control display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

OwnersManuals2.com

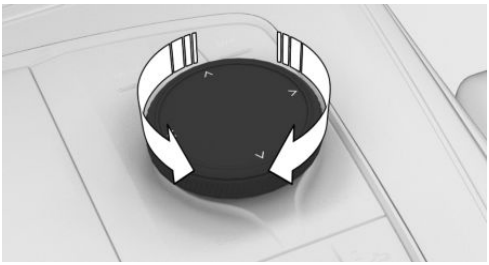
Controller

General information

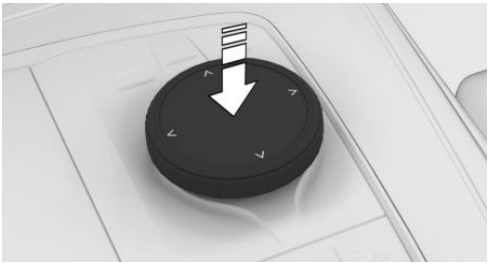
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Operation

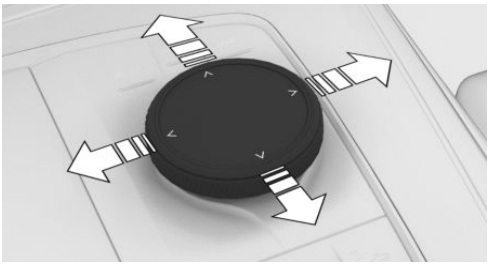
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



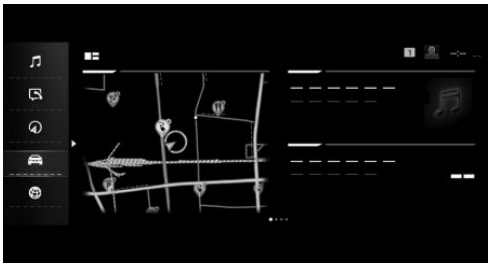
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
	Go to Apps menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Call up the Communication menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Call up the previous display.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

HOME Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Selecting a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Icon and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select icon: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on vehicle equipment, the contents of the menus "MEDIA" and "COM" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of unused functions from the menu

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.

  The current display closes and the previous display is shown.
- ▷ BACK Press the button.

  The previous display re-opens.
- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

  The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Going to the Options menu

The menu items can be used to access additional options.

Various options are available depending on the menu item selected.

OPTION Press the button.

Available options are displayed.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

OwnersManuals2.com

Deleting

Icon	Function
I←	Press the Controller: delete letters or number.
I←	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 61.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad. Tap the map on the control display and then continue the operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via control display

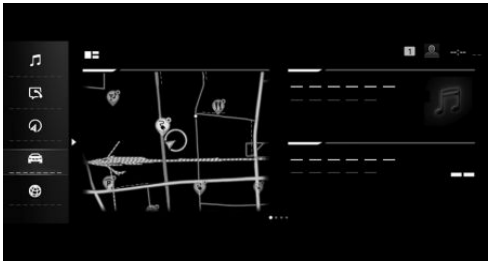
General information

Depending on the equipment version, the control display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the icon.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap icon and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ Tap on the icon.

     The widget is made larger.
   - ▷ Tap on the icon.

     The widget is made smaller.
   - ▷ ✕ Tap on the icon.

     The widget is deleted.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the control display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

OwnersManuals2.com

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on vehicle equipment, either tap the icon on the control display, or a keyboard is displayed on the control display when approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Icon	Function
	Tapping the icon: deletes the letter or number.
	Tapping and holding the icon all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.

   A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant simplifies the operation of the vehicle with the automation of processes and habits.

General information

- ▷ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▷ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▷ Say commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve the speech recognition.
- ▷ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 61.
- ▷ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▷ Online speech processing, refer to page 53.
- ▷ For all settings under

  BMW ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual on navigation, entertainment, and communication.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Activation word, refer to page 51.
- A driver profile.
- Synchronize driver profile, refer to page 68.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.

  The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- Say the activation word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal activation word.

  The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General information

Speaking the activation word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal activation word will start the system.

Preset activation word

The preset activation word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Wake word"

Personal activation word

In addition to a preset activation word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal activation word can be set up in the active driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition. An addition such as ›Hello‹ is not necessary.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set wake word"
9. Select the desired setting.

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants, e.g. Amazon Alexa.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle. In addition to the preset or personal activation word,

OwnersManuals2.com

the activation word from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Third-party providers"
7. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.

▷ ›Cancel‹

▷ Tilt the Controller to the right or left.

▷ Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the control display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Say list entries as shown.

Instructions can be issued or questions can be asked where the Personal Assistant provides support.

Function examples

Vehicle status and vehicle information

▷ ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

▷ ›Show me the sport displays.‹

▷ ›Open Owner's Manual.‹

Navigation

▷ ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey.‹

▷ ›Take me home.‹

▷ ›Are there any traffic messages?‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, calls can be started or SMS can be sent.

▷ ›Call John Doe on cell phone.‹

▷ ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 11117.‹

▷ ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there.‹

Entertainment

▷ ›Play Blue Suede Shoes by Elvis Presley‹

▷ ›Next title.‹

Climate control

▷ ›Turn off the air conditioning.‹

▷ ›I'm cold.‹

Windows and light

▷ ›Open the windows automatically.‹

▷ ›Delete activation point for automatic power window.‹

▷ ›Ambient lighting.‹

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the control display.

OwnersManuals2.com

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the control display.

Help for voice control

- ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably canceled, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

OwnersManuals2.com

The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

2. Release the button.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, the use of some Alexa functions may be restricted while driving your vehicle.

Functional requirement

- ▷ A driver profile is activated.
- ▷ An active Amazon account must exist.

Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the My BMW app and in the vehicle.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Amazon Alexa"
4. Select the desired setting.

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word "Alexa" and the desired command.

Information about the active function is displayed on the control display. If the function is restricted, reconnect Bluetooth and Wi-Fi as necessary.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific outside temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activate/deactivate

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Caring Car

Principle

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program.

General information

By selecting a program, the interior lighting, climate control and music selection will be adjusted. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired program.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Adjusting a program

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired program.
4. "Music settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

  This also applies to safety functions and systems.
- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows and convertible top closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

OwnersManuals2.com

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirement

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

  Additional information:

  Data protection, refer to page 64.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a software upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

OwnersManuals2.com

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

The data can then be transmitted from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
   - ▷ iOS: Connect Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.
   - ▷ Android: connect WLAN.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, refer to page 70.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Info about version"

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General information

- ▷ The installation of the upgrade may result in a deletion of software changes, e.g., increases in performance that have been made by parties other than the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation may take approx. 20 minutes.
- ▷ The installation cannot be terminated.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- ▷ The vehicle can be exited during the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

OwnersManuals2.com

Prerequisites for the installation

- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.
- Automatic engine start for pre-conditioning is not activated via iDrive.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met such as a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the convertible top.
- Close the windows.
- Close the trunk.
- Remove energy consuming devices such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.
- Remove the devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Starting installation

The upgrade can be installed when all prerequisites have been met.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the control display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power windows.
- Operation of the trunk lid.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

OwnersManuals2.com

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

OwnersManuals2.com

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Automatic time setting

Depending on the vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

OwnersManuals2.com

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Language

Setting the system language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Trip data settings

Principle

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again after dropping below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning above:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

OwnersManuals2.com

Applying current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the control display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Control display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off. Data can only be deleted while stationary.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the saved settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Notifications

Principle

The menu centrally displays all notifications arriving in the vehicle in form of a list.

General information

The following notifications can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Messages on service notifications.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- ▷ Messages, for instance from the BMW app.
- ▷ Messages from the manufacturer of the vehicle, for instance technical information or important customer information.

The number of notifications is additionally displayed in the status field.

OwnersManuals2.com

Go to notifications

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired notification.

Delete notifications

Notifications can be deleted from the list.

Sustained Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer with important customer information are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired notifications.
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings

It is possible to set which notifications are permitted and which notifications will be displayed at the start of the trip or upon completion of the trip.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Display, notifications

General information

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistants allows the configuration of the range of messages that will be displayed. Depending on the situation, the desired condition can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and non-critical notifications are not displayed. Icon is shown in the status information with the number of messages.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents such as messages will not be displayed directly. Icon is shown in the status information with the number of messages.

Activate/deactivate

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

OwnersManuals2.com

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Trip computer and on-board computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.
- Linking vehicle and ConnectedDrive account.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 62.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The vehicle can already adjust to the driver when it is unlocked. For this purpose, the recognition via a vehicle key or a digital key must be assigned to a driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries:The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When a driver profile is created, switched or deleted, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the control display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- ▷ Switch the driver profile.
- ▷ Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- ▷ Setting the system language.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- ▷ Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- ▷ If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- ▷ Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- ▷ Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when

OwnersManuals2.com

the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ A driver profile has not been created yet.
- ▷ No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- ▷ No driver profile has been assigned to the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries:It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

   Non-ConnectedDrive countries:A name must be entered for the driver profile.

   ConnectedDrive countries:An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

   - ▷ "Via My BMW App"

     Scanning the displayed QR code will accept the access data for the ConnectedDrive account from the BMW app.
   - ▷ "Log in"

     The access data must be entered via iDrive.
   - ▷ "New registration"

     Scan the displayed QR code and follow the instructions on the smartphone.
5. If the vehicle is in the guest profile:

   "Transfer current settings"

   The settings of the guest profile are applied.
6. ConnectedDrive countries:

   "Synchronize driver profile"

   Future changes to the settings are synchronized with the BMW Cloud.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:

   - ▷ "with vehicle key"

     The vehicle key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple vehicle keys are detected, the unintended vehicle keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.
   - ▷ "With Digital Key"

OwnersManuals2.com

The digital key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple digital keys are detected, the unintended digital keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.

6. "Activate linkage"

If the vehicle key or the smartphone with the digital key is not carried with you or not recognized, the driver profile can only be selected on the Welcome screen when a PIN has been set up.

Automatic recognition

If recognition has been defined, automatic activation of the driver profile is triggered by the following activities:

- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using an external door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you.
- ▷ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the Digital Key.

If there are several vehicle keys or Digital Keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- ▷ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers activation of the assigned driver profile.

  If the vehicle is unlocked using an unassigned key, the guest profile is activated.
- ▷ If a vehicle key and a Digital Key are detected at the same time, the Digital Key triggers the activation of the assigned driver profile.
- ▷ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activation of the driver profile, the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

  If no driver profile is assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Setting up a PIN

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without vehicle key and without digital key. In this case, a PIN can be set up to activate the driver profile.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available:If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

When another vehicle key or another digital key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "with vehicle key"
   - ▷ "With Digital Key"
6. "Activate linkage"

OwnersManuals2.com

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive. A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

Some of the settings saved to a driver profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This enables the use of these personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access, provided that this function is supported.

The following settings are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account:

- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Data protection.
- ▷ Driver profile and driver assistance.
- ▷ Language.
- ▷ Seat and climate control function.
- ▷ Exterior lights.
- ▷ Vehicle access.
- ▷ Head-up display.
- ▷ Main menu layout.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the icon.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting a profile picture

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

OwnersManuals2.com

As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.

4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The profile image is transferred from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW app.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries:If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- ▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▷ When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

OwnersManuals2.com

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Icon in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio system.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	Wi-Fi.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	Wi-Fi.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

OwnersManuals2.com

Function	Connection type	Icon in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ Wi-Fi.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on compatible mobile devices is available as follows:

- ▷ On the BMW homepage.
- ▷ Via Hotline/Customer Support
- ▷ At an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

With a search for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- ▷ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- ▷ After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone such as contacts has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- ▷ For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the operating instructions of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

OwnersManuals2.com

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

An icon to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Icon	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, Wi-Fi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The range of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the control display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth®.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones. The mobile phone with the highest priority is preferred, for instance for outgoing calls and messages.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ The vehicle key is in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is ready for operation.
- ▷ Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- ▷ The pairing readiness is displayed on the control display.
- ▷ Bluetooth default settings such as for visibility may be required on device, refer to your device operating instructions.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices are paired with the same function. Adapt the functions in the device list on the control display.
- ▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can telephone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▷ Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all telephone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

OwnersManuals2.com

- Transmission of the telephone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the telephone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display telephone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as memos.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- The mobile phone has only been connected as an audio source.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points listed have been checked and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

Wi-Fi hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.
- Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- Standby state is switched on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Connecting a device to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the Wi-Fi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the national-market version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile communication device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the control display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Wi-Fi hotspot"
8. Tilt the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the control display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the Wi-Fi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi hotspot"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay©

Principle

CarPlay allows select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice control and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone: iPhone 5 or later with iOS 9.3 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Siri voice control are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.

OwnersManuals2.com

6. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is set up, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto©

Principle

Android Auto allows select functions of a compatible smartphone to be operated via Google Assistant voice control and via iDrive.

General information

The range of services offered depends on the country.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible Android smartphone: Samsung or Google smartphone with Android 10 or an Android smartphone with Android 11, regardless of the manufacturer.
- ▷ Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- ▷ The smartphone must support a Wi-Fi connection with 5 GHz.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the control display.
6. On the mobile device, search for nearby Bluetooth devices and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.

OwnersManuals2.com

7. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All prerequisites are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is set up, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- ▷ Mobile phones.
- ▷ Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

- ▷ Playing music files.
- ▷ Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions such as very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the operating instructions of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

OwnersManuals2.com

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or bulbs.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 71.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 244.

OwnersManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Two vehicle keys are included in the scope of delivery, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

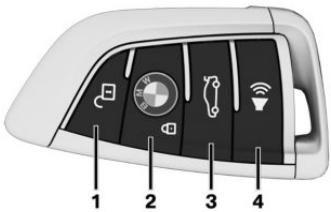
- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

Pre-conditioning 237

3 Unlocking the trunk lid

4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked when the button is pressed for the first time.
- ▷ If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 162.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are saved in it will be applied.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▷ Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the vehicle interior, they will not be folded out during unlocking.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the travel path clear.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

OwnersManuals2.com

With Comfort Access:

In close range to the vehicle, the convertible top is also opened.

Press and hold the button of the vehicle key until the convertible top is fully opened. Leaving the close range of the vehicle stops the motion.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- ▷ If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- ▷ All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows and the convertible top are closed in close range to the vehicle, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the convertible top is fully closed. Leaving the close range of the vehicle stops the motion.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Switching on the interior and exterior lighting

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, parts of the exterior lighting will be switched on.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

OwnersManuals2.com

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, it is possible to specify whether the trunk lid can be unlocked with the vehicle key and how the vehicle doors will respond to this.

With automatic transmission: selector lever position P must be engaged to open the trunk lid with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Warning

While opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Unlocking

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

Pathway lighting, refer to page 163.

Replacing the battery

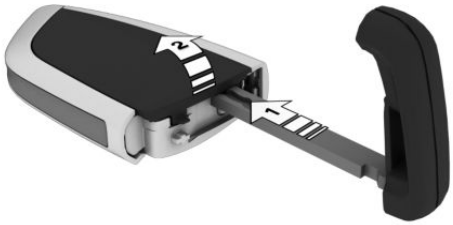
NOTICE

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of damage to property. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

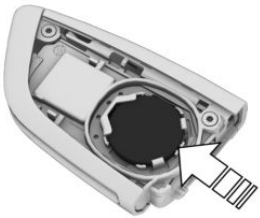
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 89.

2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the lid with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in arrow direction using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 3 V battery with the positive side facing up.

OwnersManuals2.com

5. Press the lid closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.
- Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

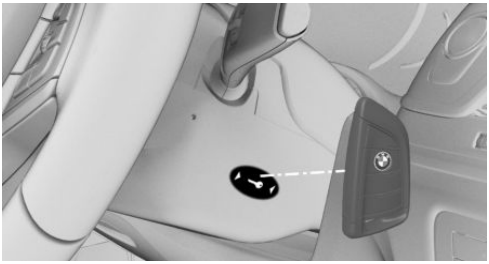
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

OwnersManuals2.com

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

The availability of the Key Card depends on the equipment and the country.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the Key Card uses near field communication, NFC.

OwnersManuals2.com

Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

General information

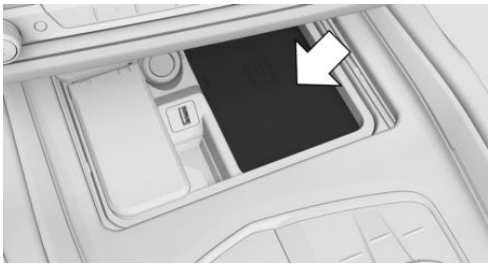
The Key Card must be located in the smartphone tray and a vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate the Key Card.

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to deactivate the Key Card.

When the BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Activating Key Card



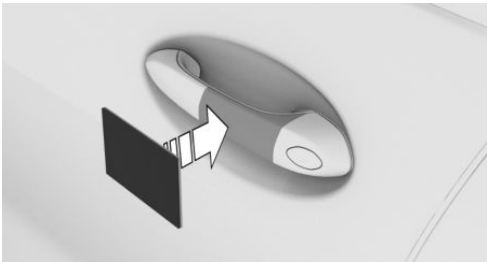
1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow the instructions on the control display to activate the Key Card.

Deactivating Key Card

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. Select Key Card.
6. "Key Card active"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



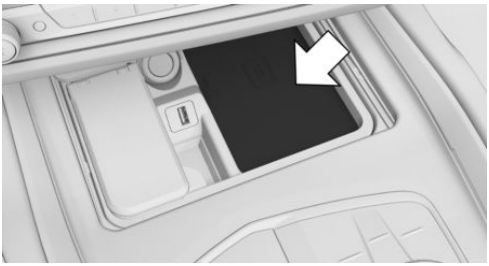
Hold activated Key Card directly on the center of the external door handle of the driver's door.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

Turning on the drive-ready state

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

With wireless charging tray:After starting the engine, take the Key Card out of the tray to

OwnersManuals2.com

make tray available for charging compatible smartphones.

Malfunction

The detection of the Key Card by the vehicle may be disrupted by objects between the sensors and the Key Card, for instance a wallet or smartphone cover.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

General information

The availability of the BMW Digital Key depends on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices such as a Smartwatch.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible.

A driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

Additional information:

Driver profiles, refer to page 65.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also helpful to have the vehicle key or Key Card with you if the vehicle needs to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card instead of your smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the smartphone uses near field communication, NFC.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- ▷ The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▷ The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

Enabling the main digital key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

The proof of authorization can be started via the BMW app or the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, e.g., the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle to be enabled.

Follow the instructions in the Digital Key menu in the BMW app or on the control display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation.

When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For instance, if the Digital Key is passed on to a novice driver, the switch-off for driving stability control systems can be disabled and the engine power can be reduced. For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive portal and the BMW app.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the main digital key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the control display.

Deleting a shared key

General information

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone with the main digital key, via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone using the main digital key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

The deletion via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive is executed immediately.

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deletion via iDrive

To be able to delete a digital key via iDrive, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the

OwnersManuals2.com

vehicle or the main key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. "Delete key"

Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

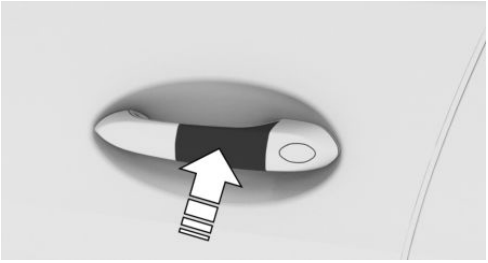
When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the main digital key will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

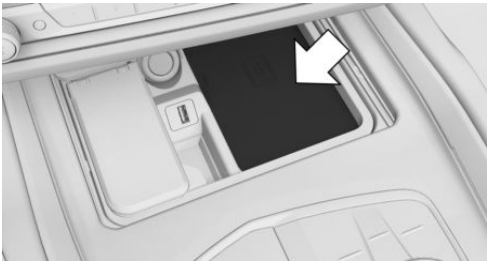


Hold the near field communication antenna of the smartphone directly and centered on the external door handle of the driver's door.

The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors including the trunk lid are closed.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone in the center of the smartphone tray.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page 98.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- ▷ Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits in the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

NOTICE

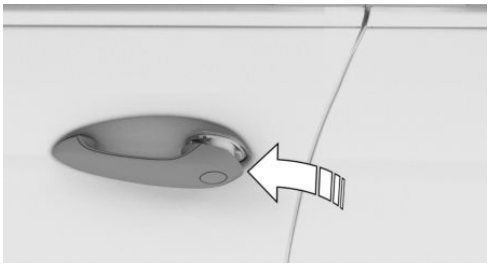
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

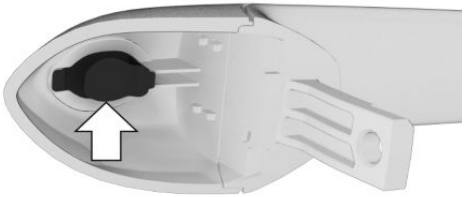
1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



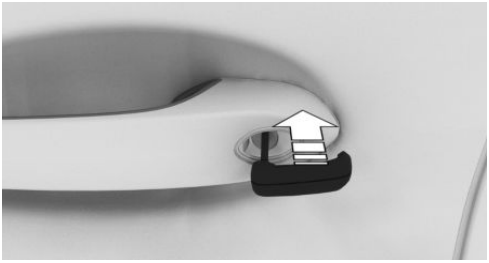
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover cap and push the cover cap out.

OwnersManuals2.com

Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover cap from falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover cap.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

If the vehicle is locked with the integrated key via the door lock, the alarm system will not be activated.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- ▷ Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- ▷ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time

OwnersManuals2.com

unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- ▷ Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the BMW Digital Key.
- ▷ Unlocking the trunk lid.

Functional requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

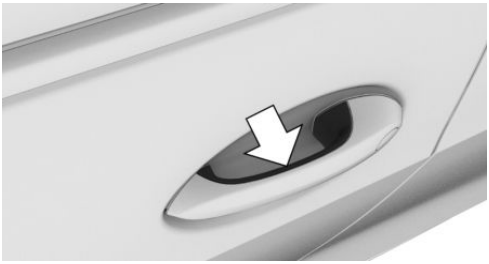
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▷ If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▷ Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

General information

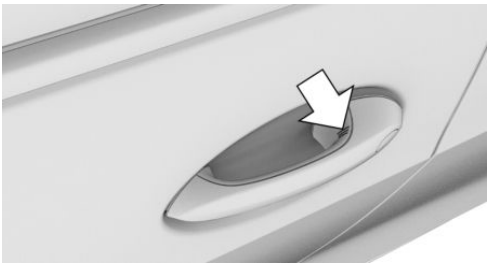
The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▷ If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- ▷ If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

OwnersManuals2.com

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- ▷ All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

Unlocking the trunk lid

General information

If you open the trunk lid via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

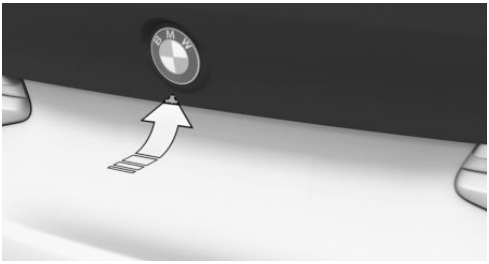
⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

⚠ Warning

While opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Unlocking



Press the button on the outer side of the trunk lid.

Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle

Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the door handles.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/2 m around the door handles.

OwnersManuals2.com

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the seat belt of the front passenger is engaged in the seat belt buckle during locking:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The behavior of the vehicle during touchless unlocking/locking depends on the following settings:

- If the automatic unlocking is active.
- If the automatic locking is active.
- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.

  Only driver's door and fuel filler flap: the driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

  All vehicle entry points: the vehicle will be unlocked regardless of the side on which the driver approaches the vehicle.
- If the unlocking and locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Functional requirements

- The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 18 ft/6 m around the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 82.
- Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

OwnersManuals2.com

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, it is possible to specify whether the trunk lid can be unlocked with the vehicle key and how the vehicle doors will function.

With automatic transmission: selector lever position P must be engaged to open the trunk lid with the vehicle key.

It may not be possible to open the trunk lid when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Valet parking mode, refer to page 95.

Safety information

Warning

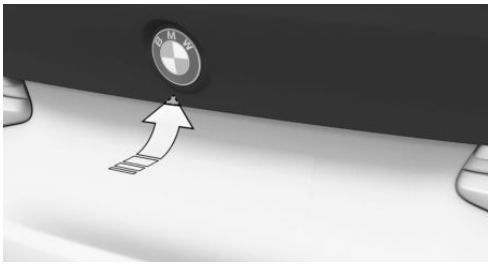
Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Warning

While opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Opening and Closing

Opening from the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the trunk lid.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outer side of the trunk lid.
- Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

  When unlocking with the vehicle key, the doors may also be unlocked.

Open from inside

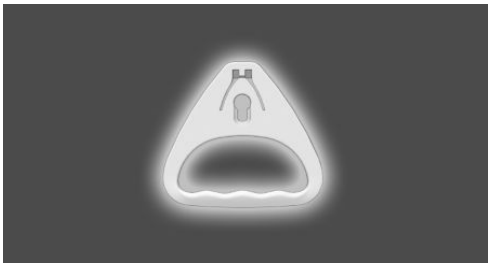
Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Closing

Grasp the recessed grips and pull the trunk lid down.

OwnersManuals2.com

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the control display is disabled. The operation via iDrive is no longer possible.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Personal profiles cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

- ▷ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▷ The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- ▷ The Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle, the trunk lid can be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

Functional requirements

- ▷ At least one driver profile has been created.
- ▷ A driver profile or the guest profile is active.
- ▷ At least one driver profile has an assigned ConnectedDrive account.

Accessing the menu for the valet parking mode

Via the switch-off screen

After switching off drive-ready state the switch-off screen will be displayed. Select the entry for the valet parking mode on the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the upper edge of the control display

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating the valet parking mode

General information

Before activating the valet parking mode, a PIN must be set up to be able to deactivate the valet parking mode at a future time.

The procedure for the PIN input varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been stored for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

1. "Lock tailgate as well"

OwnersManuals2.com

The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

2. "Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. "Lock tailgate as well"

   The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
4. "Activate linkage"
5. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The guest profile is the active driver profile.

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. "Lock tailgate as well"

   The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
4. "Activate now"

   This PIN can be used once to deactivate the valet parking mode for the active guest profile.

Deactivating valet parking mode

General information

The lock screen of the valet parking mode is displayed on the control display.

The deactivation of the valet parking mode depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver activated the valet parking mode, a driver can deactivate the valet parking mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the assigned PIN for the driver profile.

If you forgot the PIN, the valet parking mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive access data.

Driver profile without PIN

The valet parking mode was activated by another person. To deactivate the valet parking mode, a driver without a PIN has to enter the access data for his ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive access data assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

In the guest profile, the valet parking mode can only be deactivated if the valet parking mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was specified during activation.

If the PIN has been forgotten, the valet parking mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Settings

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

OwnersManuals2.com

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the icon.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - ▷ "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock in a few minutes"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Trunk lid

Trunk lid and doors

You can set up if only the trunk lid will be unlocked or if the doors will also be unlocked when the trunk lid is unlocked

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the icon.

   The text next to the icon indicates the current setting.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     Depending on the equipment, the trunk lid will be unlocked or opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

OwnersManuals2.com

Depending on the equipment, the trunk lid will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.

- "Tailgate opens only when vehicle is unlocked."

  The vehicle must be unlocked before the trunk lid can be used with the vehicle key.

- "Lock tailgate button"

  The operation of the trunk lid via the vehicle key is disabled.

Comfort Access

Touchless locking and unlocking

Contactless locking and unlocking can be switched on or off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Comfort access"

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

   Idle state, refer to page 38.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- Movements in the interior.
- Changes in the vehicle inclination such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD on-board diagnostics.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.

- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning on/off

The alarm system is turned on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked with the vehicle key or via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the trunk lid with the alarm system switched on

The trunk lid can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

OwnersManuals2.com

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or trunk lid are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been deployed.

Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

The car's interior is monitored to the height of the seat surfaces. The alarm system is switched on together with the interior motion sensor even when the convertible top is open. Falling objects such as leaves can trigger the alarm unintentionally.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

OwnersManuals2.com

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 83.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- ▷ Vehicle key, refer to page 79.
- ▷ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 50.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

OwnersManuals2.com

Jam protection system

Principle

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Convertible top

General information

Follow the following information:

- Close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. A closed convertible top protects it from weather-related damage and to some extent from theft.
- Even when the convertible top is closed, only store valuables in the locked cargo area.
- At higher speeds, a vacuum produced in the vehicle interior causes the convertible top to begin to flutter. Increase the air flow via the ventilation to prevent a vacuum in the vehicle.
- It is not possible to start the engine and operate the convertible top simultaneously. When the engine is started using the Start/Stop button or using the Auto Start/Stop function, the convertible top movement is briefly interrupted.
- Opening a door interrupts closure of the convertible top.
- In order to protect the battery, move the convertible top only when the engine is running.
- Remove objects stowed in the convertible top compartment before opening the convertible top.
- Before closing the convertible top, remove any foreign bodies from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the travel path clear.

Warning

When operating the convertible top while driving, the view to the rear may be limited. At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h the convertible top stops in its current position. There may be a risk of accidents and risk of damage to property. When operating the convertible top while driving, observe traffic attentively and, if necessary, reduce speed. Do not operate while reversing or in windy weather.

Warning

The convertible top is not suitable for the installation of roof carrier systems. The roof carrier could come loose. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount any roof carrier systems to the convertible top.

Warning

A convertible top that is not completely open or closed is not locked and can open by itself while driving due to the air stream. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the convertible top is always completely open or closed.

NOTICE

Incorrect operation can damage the convertible top and other parts of the vehicle.

There is a risk of damage to property. During operation, heed the following points:

- ▷ Keep the area of movement of the convertible top clear because the convertible top swivels out and upward. Maximum area of movement: 98.5 inches/2.5 meters.
- ▷ Fully close the trunk lid.
- ▷ Do not leave the convertible top open for more than a day while it is wet.
- ▷ Do not open the convertible top, if it is wet, covered in snow, iced up, or dirty.
- ▷ Do not place objects on the convertible top.
- ▷ The rollover protection system may not be triggered.
- ▷ Do not operate the convertible top on uneven sections of road.
- ▷ Always open or close the convertible top completely. The convertible top is only locked in its end positions.

Overview

With manual transmission

Convertible top switch

OwnersManuals2.com

With Steptronic transmission

Convertible top switch

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met in order to be able to move the convertible top.

- ▷ The maximum speed is 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ The standby state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed or the drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- ▷ The voltage of the vehicle electrical system is sufficient.
- ▷ The convertible top drive is not overheating.
- ▷ The windows can be opened and closed automatically.

If one of these prerequisites is not met, a check control message is displayed.

Operating from the inside

Opening

Push the switch and hold it.

The windows roll down and the convertible top opens while the switch is being pushed.

Closing

Pull the switch and hold it.

The windows are lowered, the convertible top is closed, and the windows are raised again while the switch is being pulled.

Preventing an interruption

Push or pull the switch until the convertible top is completely open or closed and the end of the procedure is indicated by a Check Control message. Always make sure that the side cover flaps are completely closed. The convertible top can only be locked if the convertible top is completely open or closed.

The convertible top movement is interrupted if the switch is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction using the switch.

The convertible is not locked in this case. Operate switch again until the convertible operation is terminated.

Operation from the outside

When equipped with Comfort Access the convertible top can also be operated from outside.

Convenient opening and convenient closing via the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Vehicle key, refer to page 79.

Manually closing the convertible top

General information

If there is a fault, the convertible top can be manually closed. Two persons are necessary to do this.

If possible, have the convertible top closed manually by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

In case of an electrical malfunction, the convertible top cannot be locked in the fully open position. The convertible top will rise up while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident. Do not open the closed convertible top manually.

Warning

While manually lowering the convertible top, body parts can be jammed. With one-sided operation, the convertible top can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the convertible top and the convertible top well storage cover is free. Only close the convertible top manually with two people.

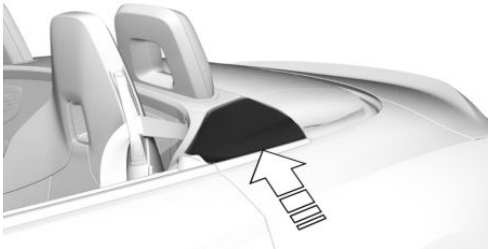
Before closing

1. Lower the side windows completely.
2. Switching off, standby state.

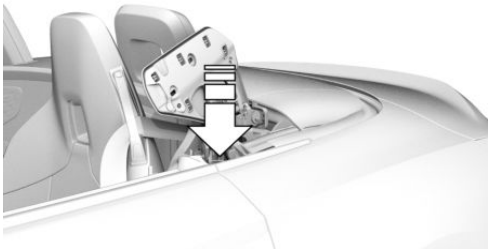
   Start/Stop button, refer to page 122.
3. Take the hexagon wrench out of the on-board vehicle tool kit.

Lifting out convertible top

1. Carefully swivel the covers up on both sides until they are open.



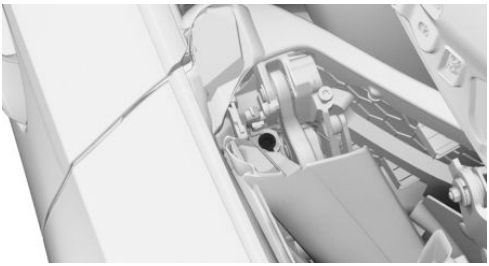
2. Position the hexagon wrench in the screw.



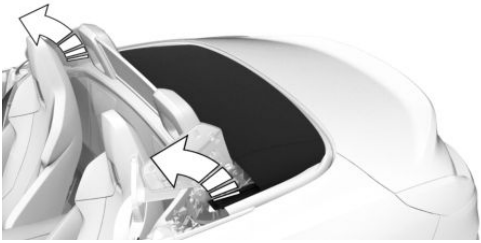
3. Turn the screw on the left side of the vehicle counterclockwise to the stop. Turn the

OwnersManuals2.com

screw on the right side of the vehicle clockwise to the stop.



4. Lift the convertible top out on the front on both sides, and swing it forward.



Convertible top locking

1. Carefully remove the cover in the center of the front convertible top frame.

2. Take the square socket adapter out of the cover.

3. Insert the square socket adapter in the hexagon wrench.

4. Position the hexagon wrench with inserted adapter on the convertible top locking (arrow).

OwnersManuals2.com

Turn the hexagon wrench clockwise to the stop to open the locking hooks.

5. While one person presses the center of the front convertible top frame from the outside onto the windshield frame: turn the hexagon wrench counterclockwise to the stop to close the locking hooks. The front convertible top frame must be locked in the windshield frame.
6. Have the convertible top checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

When driving in the rain or on a wet road surface with the convertible top locked only in the front, water will penetrate the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive in the rain or on a wet road surface with the convertible top locked only in the front.

NOTICE

Driving faster than 50 mph/80 km/h with the convertible locked only in the front may damage the convertible top. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving with the convertible top locked only in the front, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Wind deflector

Principle

The wind deflector reduces the air movement in the vehicle interior when driving with the convertible top down.

The wind deflector is most effective when the side windows are closed.

General information

The integrated wind deflector is held in position by magnetic force.

The magnets are located on the lower end of the wind deflector fitting.

Do not store any electronic storage media, cards with magnetic strips or chip cards in the immediate vicinity of the magnets.

Safety information

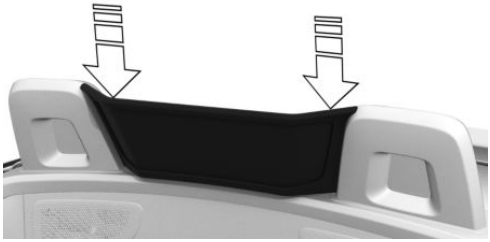
Warning

A wind deflector that has not been mounted correctly may fly off and be thrown into the vehicle or endanger other road users. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property.

Before drive-off, make sure that the wind deflector is completely pushed down to the stop and mounted.

OwnersManuals2.com

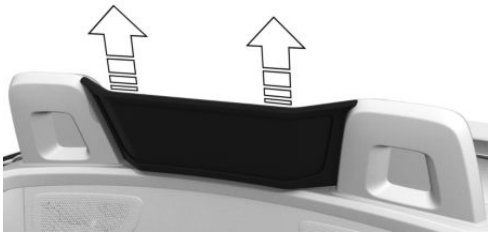
Installing



Press the wind deflector down evenly to the stop.

The magnetic retaining force must be noticeable.

Removing



Pull the wind deflector up evenly.

The magnetic retaining force must be overcome when pulling the wind deflector out of the guides.

OwnersManuals2.com

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

▷ Seats, refer to page 108.
▷ Seat belts, refer to page 110.
▷ Head restraints, refer to page 112.
▷ Airbags, refer to page 168.

Seats

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

⚠ Warning

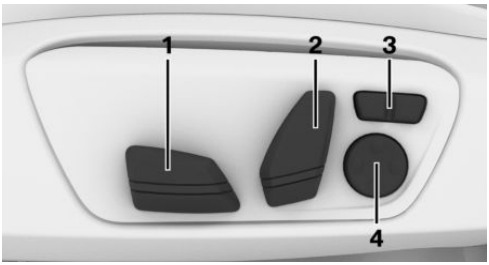
There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



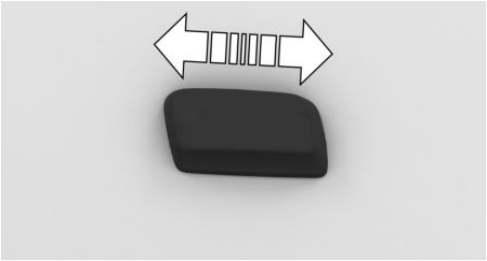
1 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

2 Backrest tilt

OwnersManuals2.com

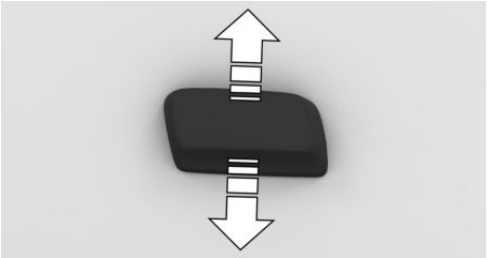
3 Backrest width
4 Lumbar support

Longitudinal direction



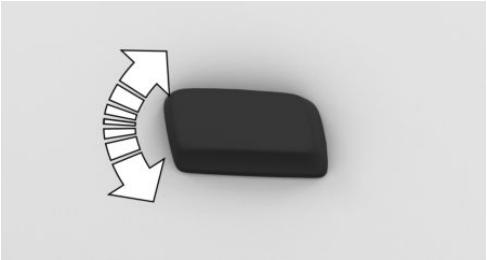
Press switch forward or backward.

Height



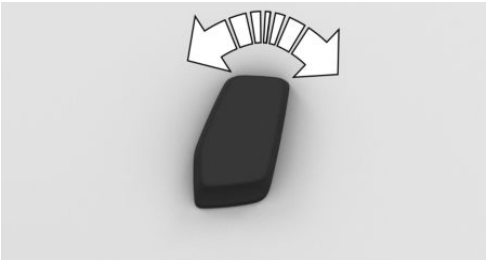
Press switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Calibrating the front seats

General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Calibrating the front seat

1. Press the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
2. Press the switch forward again until the seat stops.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

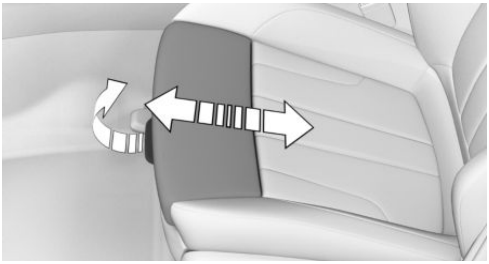
As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

OwnersManuals2.com

If this message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Seat belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with two seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, the seat belts can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All belt fastening points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts with proper use of the seat belts and correct seat setting. Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 108.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.
Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully operational or fail in the following situations:

- The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Seat belt tensioners or roll-up mechanism were modified.

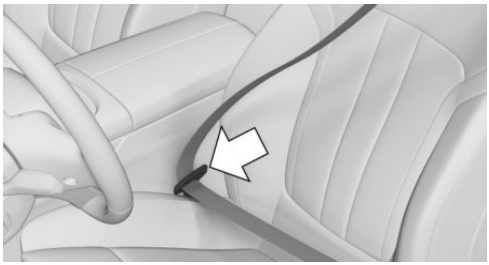
Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, roll-up mechanisms, and belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of seat belts

- Insert the seat belt into the belt guide.
- Wear the seat belt tight to your body over your lap and shoulders, without twisting it.
- Wear the seat belt deep on your hips over your lap. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward around your upper body area.

Buckling the seat belt

1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.

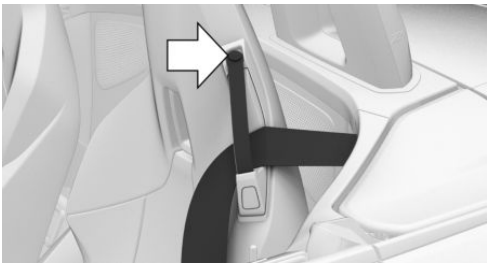


Unbuckling the seat belt

1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

OwnersManuals2.com

Belt guide



When buckling seat belts, make sure the belt guide is closed.

The magnet may open if the seat position has been changed.

Seat belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger's seat

General information

The seat belt reminder is issued when the driver's side seat belt is not buckled.

The seat belt reminder is also active when the front passenger seat belt is not buckled or objects are on the front passenger seat.

The seat belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a seat belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light illuminates and a signal sounds. Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly. The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General information

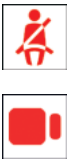
The seat belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The seat belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Icon	Description
	Green: the seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Front head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

Adjusting the distance

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

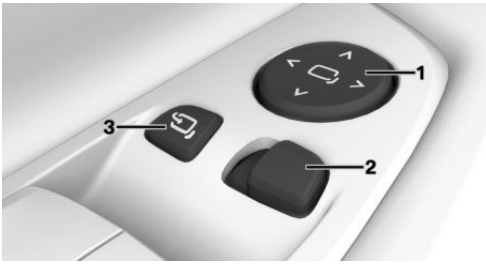
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

OwnersManuals2.com

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

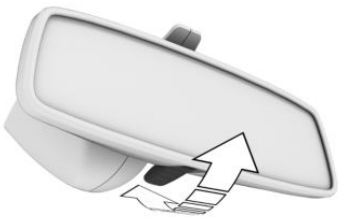
Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable



To reduce the blinding glare of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

General information

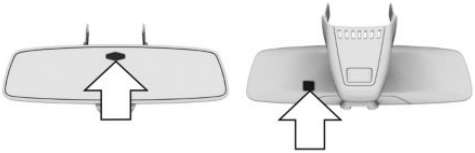
The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the rear of the mirror.

OwnersManuals2.com

Overview



Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

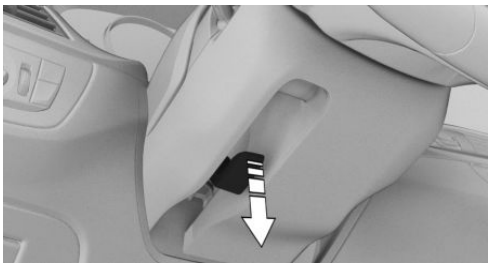
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview

Button for steering wheel heating

Turning on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the steering wheel heating turns on automatically if the function was turned on at the completion of the last trip.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

OwnersManuals2.com

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front door.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED in the button illuminates.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

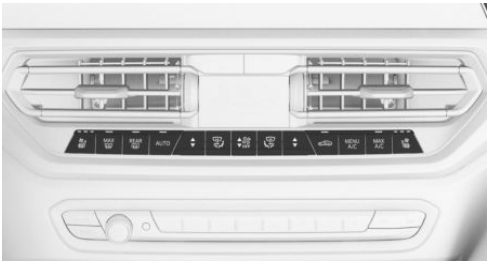
The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat heating

Overview



Seat heating

Turning on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are illuminated.

When ECO PRO is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 261.

Turning off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs turn off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Climate control rules

Principle

Depending on the equipment, some heating and air conditioning functions can be automatically activated depending on the outside temperature.

General information

The outside temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new adjustment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

Drive-ready state is switched on.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired function.
6. Activate the desired rule.
7. Set the level.

OwnersManuals2.com

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 170.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Warning

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbags

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

OwnersManuals2.com

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 170.

Seat position and height

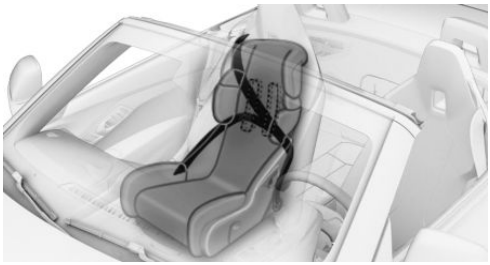
After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child restraint seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The seat belt on the passenger's side can be locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is disabled.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of dam-

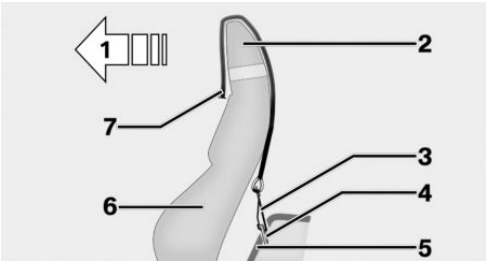
OwnersManuals2.com

age to property. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

Attachment points

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point/eye
5 Vehicle floor
6 Fit
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the attachment point cover.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap over the head restraint to the anchor.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
4. Tighten the retaining strap.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Manual transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the clutch pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Steptronic transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- ▷ Drive-ready state, refer to page 39.
- ▷ Standby state, refer to page 39.

Driving off

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Driving off.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

Additional information:

Coasting, refer to page 263.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

Manual transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

OwnersManuals2.com

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Total time with switched-off engine

ECO PRO driving mode: depending on the vehicle equipment, the total time that the engine has been switched off using the Auto Start/Stop function is displayed on an automatic engine stop.

The total time can be reset via the trip data.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 261.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- The outside temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- Hood is unlocked.
- The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever position in N or R.
- After driving in reverse.
- Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

Manual transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By pressing the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- In case of excessive warming of the interior when air conditioning is turned on.
- In case of excessive cooling of the interior when the heating is turned on.
- In case of a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is turned on.
- Without mild hybrid technology: in case of a steering operation.
- Steptronic transmission:

  When changing from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Steptronic transmission:

  When changing from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in an anticipatory manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- A situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short. The engine is not automatically switched off. A message appears on the control display, depending on the situation.
- A situation is detected in which the vehicle should be started up immediately. The switched-off engine starts automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

OwnersManuals2.com

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Principle

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Via button

Press the button.

Steptronic transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S.

Via the Driving Experience Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Experience Control.

Display

- ▷ LED is illuminated: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- ▷ LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Manual transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
   - ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

OwnersManuals2.com

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.

   Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is depressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and the indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

OwnersManuals2.com

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED illuminates.

AUTO H The indicator light illuminates green.

Automatic Hold is ready to use.

After every vehicle restart, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After the brake is applied, the vehicle is kept from rolling away as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching operational readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press on the brake pedal when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or in case of a fault, secure the vehicle against rolling away before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power interruption:

1. Turn on standby state.
2. (P) Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

OwnersManuals2.com

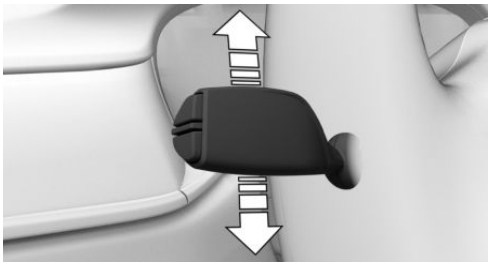
PARK (P) The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lamps on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Flashing



Press the lever past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

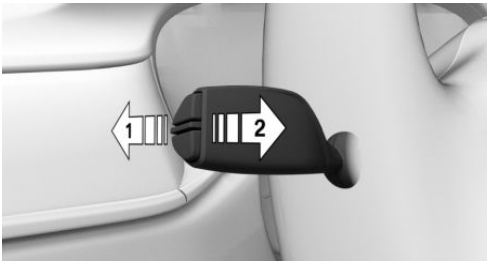
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
  The high beams illuminate when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Window wiper system

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

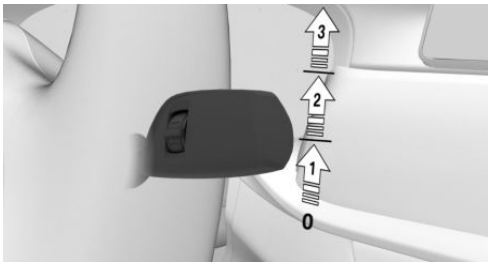
The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on a dry window for a longer period of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the wipers when the window is dry.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Turning on window wiper system

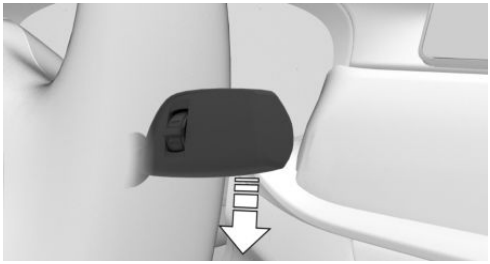


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turn off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

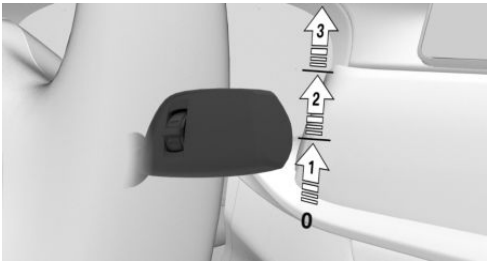
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



Press the lever up once from its 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

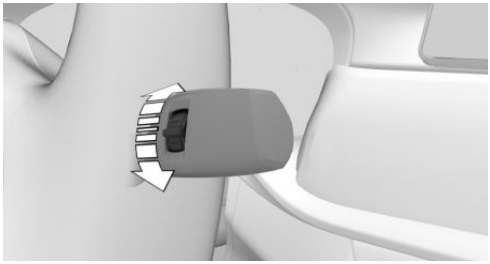
OwnersManuals2.com

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- ▷ Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.
- ▷ Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed on the windshield, and the wipers are turned on briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

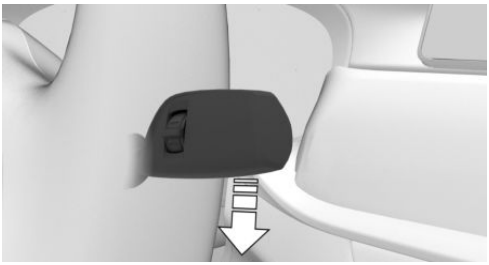
OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.

Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

   Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Manual transmission

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

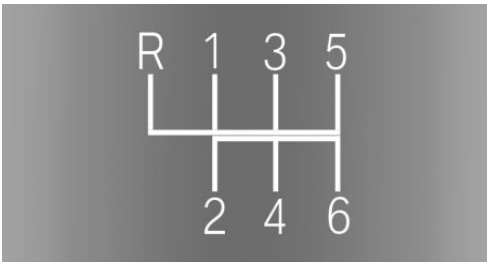
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

Shift pattern



- ▷ 1–6: forward gears.
- ▷ R: reverse gear.

OwnersManuals2.com

Shifting

General information

Depending on the motorization, the RPM during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically as required for harmonious gear changing.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Gear position D

Selector lever position for normal driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in car washes, in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the individual wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been turned off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S, or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move. Also set parking brake.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 126.

OwnersManuals2.com

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

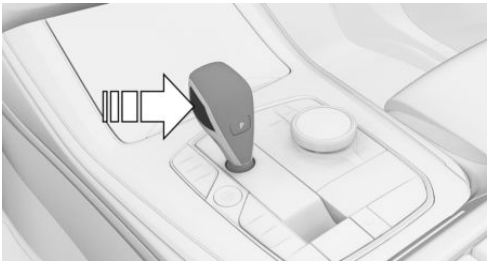
The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical prerequisites are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following incorrect operation:

- ▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
- ▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Fasten driver's seat belt.
2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash or to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

⚠ NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

OwnersManuals2.com

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 127.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page 137.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

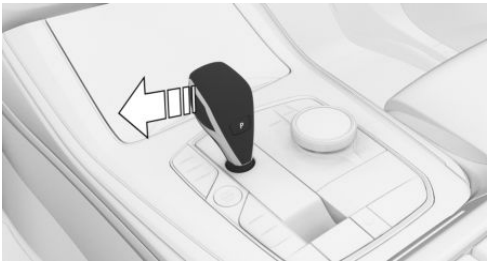
Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Principle

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for sportier handling. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the Sport program



Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

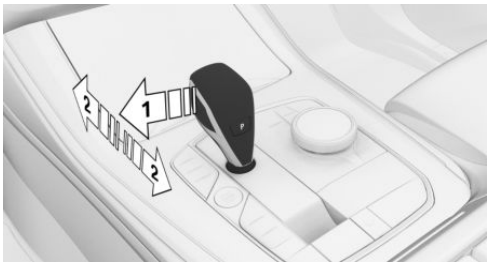
Manual mode M/S

Principle

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.



2. Press the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

OwnersManuals2.com

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- ▷ To downshift: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ Upshifting: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when RPM limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

Depending on the motorization: if driving mode SPORT is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

Additional information:

SPORT, refer to page 139.

Ending the manual mode

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to change gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable RPM and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- ▷ Keep the right shift paddle pulled until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

OwnersManuals2.com

Shifting

- ▷ Upshifting: pull the right shift paddle.
- ▷ Downshifting: pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ Downshifting to the lowest possible gear: keep the left shift paddle pulled.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

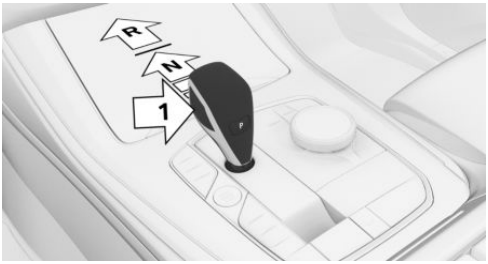
Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engage selector lever position N

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can crank the engine.

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 318.

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page 256.

OwnersManuals2.com

Functional requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Starting with launch control

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF illuminates.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the destination flag illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Driving Experience Control

Principle

The Driving Experience Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- ▷ Engine characteristics.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission.
- ▷ Adaptive M chassis.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise control.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving modes

Buttons in the vehicle

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
SPORT	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
SPORT	SPORT PLUS	
COMFORT	COMFORT	
ECO PRO	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
ADAPTIVE	ADAPTIVE	

When drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT driving mode is selected automatically.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Principle

The COMFORT driving mode is a balanced setting between sporty and consumption-optimized driving.

Turning on

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Principle

The SPORT driving mode is a dynamic setting for more agility with an optimized suspension.

Turning on

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Principle

In the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode, individual settings can be adjusted to support driving dynamics properties.

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Damping"
   - ▷ "Steering"
   - ▷ "Engine"
   - ▷ "Transmission"
   - ▷ Manual transmission: "Gear Shift Assistant"

     The engine speed is adjusted for shifting during downshifting.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Principle

The SPORT PLUS driving mode is a dynamic setting for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

OwnersManuals2.com

Turning on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Principle

In ECO PRO driving mode, consumption is optimized.

Turning on

ECO PRO Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Principle

In the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode, individual settings can be adjusted to support an economical driving style.

The engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Principle

The ADAPTIVE driving mode is a balanced driving mode that automatically adapts to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Turning on

ADAPTIVE Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration set last is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

OwnersManuals2.com

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster consists of various digital displays, e.g., a speedometer, time, range, temperatures as well as indicator and warning lights.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, it may be possible to deactivate the display change in the instrument cluster via iDrive.

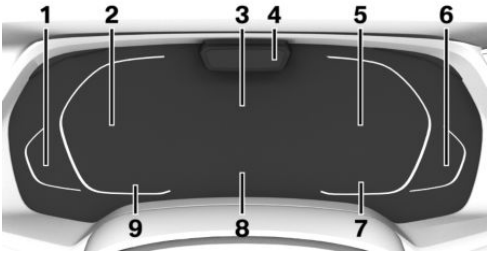
Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Safety information

Warning

If the displays on the instrument cluster fail, do not use the vehicle. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:Overview



1 Fuel gauge 150
Range 154

2 Speedometer

3 Central display range 142
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 151
Selection lists 155
Widgets 142
Trip odometer, see Trip data 156
Shift lights 152
ECO PRO displays 261
Power gauge 151
Status Driving Experience Control 138
Transmission display 133

6 Engine temperature 153

7 Outside temperature 153

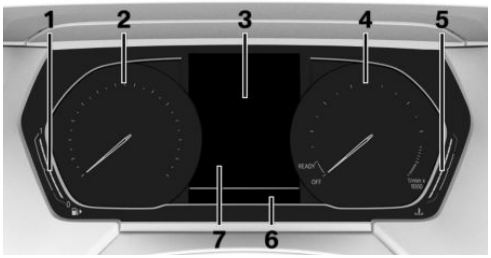
8 Check Control 145

9 Speed Limit Assistant 205
Speed Limit Info 191

OwnersManuals2.com

Time 60

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:Overview



1 Fuel gauge 150
2 Speedometer
3 Check Control 145
Widgets 143
Service notifications 154
Shift lights 152
Range 154
4 Tachometer 151
5 Engine temperature 153
6 Outside temperature 153
Transmission display
Driving Experience Control 138
Time 60
7 Speed Limit Info 191

Central display range

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display range of the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with route guidance information.
- ▷ Displays for service notification.

Some displays in the central display range can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and national-market version.

Driving mode view

Principle

Depending on the equipment, if the driving mode view is activated, the displays in the instrument cluster will adapt to the respective driving mode when a program is changed via the Driving Experience Control.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Driving mode view"

Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Instrument cluster with extended features: widgets

Principle

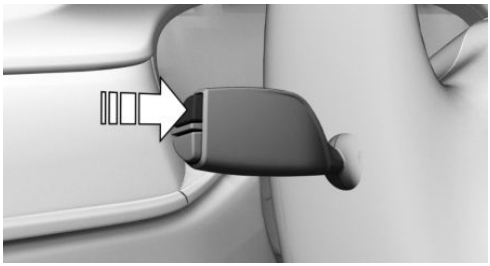
Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- ▷ Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- ▷ Torque and power.
- ▷ G-Meter.
- ▷ Trip data.
- ▷ Efficiency display.

OwnersManuals2.com

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

G-Meter

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

Efficiency display

Principle

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

Driving mode	Display
COMFORT SPORT	Average consumption. Current consumption. Energy recovery.
ECO PRO	ECO PRO bonus range. Distance traveled in Coasting mode. Current consumption.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy in coasting/overrun mode. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

ECO PRO bonus range

In the ECO PRO driving mode, the yielded extension of the range as a result of fuel-efficient driving is displayed as ECO PRO bonus range.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features: widgets

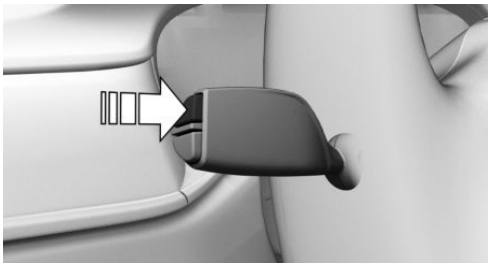
Principle

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Distance covered.
- Consumption display.
- Current consumption and average consumption.
- Digital speed.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Configuring widgets

Some widgets can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Configure widgets"
6. Select the desired setting.

Information in detail

Distance covered

The widget for the distance covered shows the total distance and traveled distance depending on the setting for the display of the trip data.

Consumption display

Principle

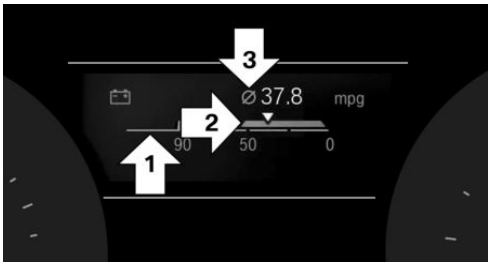
During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy in coasting/overrun mode. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

The current consumption displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

General information

Energy recovery and current consumption can be displayed as bar displays.

Display



- Energy recovery, arrow 1.
- Current consumption, arrow 2.
- Average consumption, arrow 3.

Current consumption and average consumption

The widget shows the current consumption and average consumption depending on the setting for the display of the trip data.

OwnersManuals2.com

Check Control

Principle

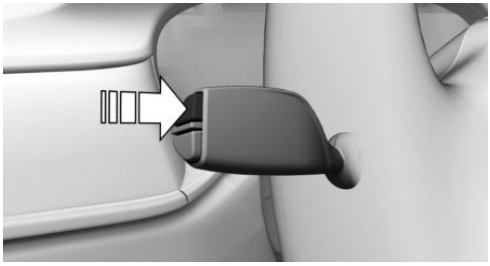
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the control display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the fault is eliminated. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with an icon in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information such as the cause of a fault or the required action can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the control display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Indicator/warning lights

Principle

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a fault is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

Indicator lamp illuminates in the following situations:

- ▷ Seat belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled.
- ▷ The seat belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ The seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

Rear seat belt reminder: seat detection

The seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Warning light illuminates briefly: Indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may be not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 168.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 127.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.

The braking assistance may not function. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Risk of collision

Warning light illuminates or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if there is risk of imminent collision.

Additional information:

- ▷ Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

Forward Collision Warning with braking function

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, is detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a vehicle detected.

OwnersManuals2.com

Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 173.

Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation

The warning light illuminates and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

Drive power

Reduced drive power due to an overheated drivetrain.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 151.

Yellow lights

Antilock Braking System

The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.

The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page 187.

Dynamic Stability Control

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is being initialized. Driving stability is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.

The Dynamic Stability Control deactivated or the Dynamic Traction Control activated

The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or the Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.
- Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 189.

Flat tire monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 289.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tire pressure monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 282.

Steering system

Steering system may not be operational.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- ▷ The warning light illuminates:

  Worsening emissions, e.g., due to an incorrectly fitted fuel cap. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Socket for OBD on-board diagnostics, refer to page 308.

Green lights

Rear seats: seat belt fastened

The seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Rear seats: seat detection

The seat belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal

Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 129.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 162.

OwnersManuals2.com

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 162.

Lane departure warning

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued. The system can perform steering interventions.

Indicator light flashes: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 178.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Automatic High Beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page 164.

Automatic Hold: vehicle is held automatically

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Driving, refer to page 122.

Automatic Hold: vehicle secured against rolling away

Steptronic transmission: The vehicle is prevented from rolling away after the brake is applied.

Additional information:

Driving, refer to page 122.

Manual Speed Limiter

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 193.

Depending on the equipment: Cruise Control

The system is active.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, Cruise Control, refer to page 191.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function switched on

The system is turned on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 198.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function: vehicle ahead

Indicator light illuminates: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator lamp is flashing: vehicle ahead is driving off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 198.

Speed Limit Assistant activated

Depending on the equipment, the indicator light is illuminated together with the icon for a speed control system: Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be accepted manually for the displayed system.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 205.

Speed Limit Assistant: apply speed limit

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 205.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams have been switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 129.

Drive power

Reduced drive power due to a cold drivetrain.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 151.

Gray lights

Manual Speed Limiter

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 193.

Depending on the equipment: Cruise Control

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, Cruise Control, refer to page 191.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 266.

Display

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

An arrow next to the fuel pump icon indicates the vehicle side on which the fuel filler flap is located.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

OwnersManuals2.com

An arrow next to the fuel pump icon indicates the vehicle side on which the fuel filler flap is located.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Depending on the equipment, the tachometer can also be shown in the Head-up display.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Engine display"
6. "Tachometer"

When the setting for the driving mode view is activated, the activated tachometer is only shown in the COMFORT or SPORT driving mode.

To display the tachometer in the Head-up display, the sport displays of the Head-up display must be activated.

Reduced engine speed range

The available engine speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available engine speed range.

Instrument cluster with extended features:Power gauge

Principle

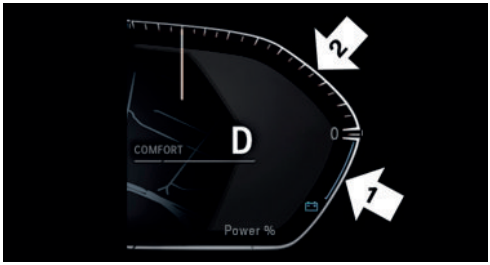
The power gauge indicates the available drive power as a percentage.

Activate/deactivate

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Engine display"
6. "Power meter"

When the setting for the driving mode view is activated, the activated power gauge is only shown in the COMFORT driving mode.

Display



Needle in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when decelerating, CHARGE.

Needle in the range of arrow 2: the drive power in percent, POWER.

OwnersManuals2.com

Drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors, for instance a cold engine. Depending on the available drive power, the range for POWER is adjusted automatically.

If needed, icons in the power gauge indicate a reduction of the drive power.

Example icon	Description
	Reduced drive power due to a cold drivetrain.
	Reduced drive power due to an overheated drivetrain.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights on the instrument cluster indicate the time to upshift in order to achieve the best possible acceleration.

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the Shift lights are active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic Sport transmission and with manual transmission.

The Shift lights display is available either in the instrument cluster or in the Head-up display.

Functional requirement

- ▷ Depending on the equipment, either driving program SPORT or SPORT PLUS is activated.
- ▷ To display the Shift lights in the Head-up display, the sport displays of the Head-up display must be activated.

Turning on/turning off

Steptronic Sport transmission:

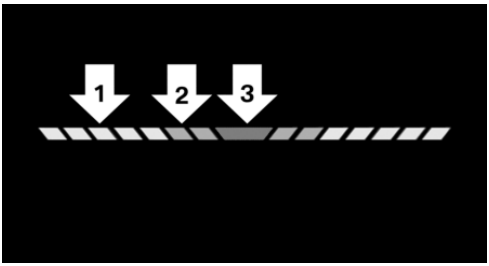
1. If applicable, select SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving mode.

   Press Driving Experience Control.
2. Activate the M manual mode of the transmission.

Manual transmission:

Depending on the equipment, select either SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving mode. Press Driving Experience Control.

Display



Instrument cluster without enhanced features.

Information about the driving style

- ▷ The current RPM is displayed in the tachometer.
- ▷ Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate an increase in the RPM.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Arrow 2: successive fields illuminated orange indicate an optimal shift point.
- Arrow 3: the field illuminates red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. The Auto Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

The word OFF in the tachometer indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The word READY in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is turned on and the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

Operating condition of the vehicle, refer to page 38.

Engine temperature

Display

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

- Cold engine: the needle is at the low temperature value. Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the needle is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the needle is at the high temperature value. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

- Cold engine: the LEDs of the indicator show a low temperature value. Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the LEDs of the indicator show an average temperature value.
- Hot engine: the LEDs of the indicator show a high temperature value. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 305.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current full tank of fuel.

General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

The current range is displayed as numerical value between speedometer and tachometer.

Service notification

Principle

The service requirement notifications indicate necessary maintenance work.

General information

After turning on the drive-ready state, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next service is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster.

A service advisor can read out the maintenance work from the vehicle key.

Display

Detailed information on service requirement notifications

More information may be displayed on the control display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"

   Maintenance work as well as possible legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

OwnersManuals2.com

Icons

Icons	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the gear shift indicator is active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Manual transmission: displaying

Suggestions to upshift or downshift are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
3	Efficient gear is set.
2▸3	Shift into efficient gear.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to upshift or downshift are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	Efficient gear is set.
2▸3	Shift into efficient gear.

Selection lists

Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the control display.

OwnersManuals2.com

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

The lists can be displayed and operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The list of the current entertainment source can be displayed in the instrument cluster again by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., trip distance.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals such as after refueling.

Display on the control display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the set interval and driving mode:

- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ Average consumption depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
- ▷ Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled and the driving mode.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the distance covered can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

OwnersManuals2.com

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Total kilometers.
- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

Widgets, refer to page 142.

Instrument cluster without enhanced features:

Widgets, refer to page 143.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Values since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Factory": average consumption since delivery from the factory.

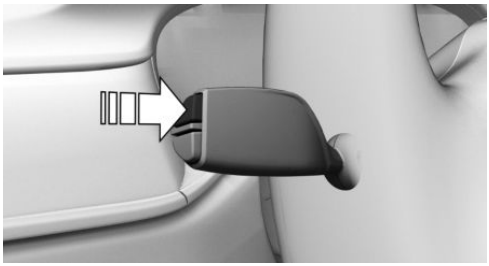
     The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Values since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the control display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Boost pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.
- ▷ G-Meter.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following widgets can be selected:

- Widget for torque and power.
- Widget for G-Meter.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page 142.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Going to the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Icons	Description
	"Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 289.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 282.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 302.
	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 145.
	"Required services": display of the service notification, refer to page 154.

BMW Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed.

General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Overview

The protective glass of the Head-up display is located in the position marked.

Turning on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

OwnersManuals2.com

3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.
- ▷ Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The base setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up display can be adjusted using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The height of the Head-up display can be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - ▷ "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the

OwnersManuals2.com

instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- "Sport displays":
  - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up display.
  - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT driving mode.
  - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch is located next to the steering wheel.

Icon	Function
OFF	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P	Right roadside parking light.
P	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Principle

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

If the low beams are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

Activating

AUTO Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low-beams and roadside parking lights

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Turning on

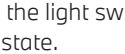
Press the button on the light switch.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Turning off



Press the button on the light switch or turn on drive-ready state.

After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

Low beams

Turning on

Press the button on the light switch.

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

Press the button again to switch on the low beams when the standby state is switched on.

Turning off

Depending on the national-market version, the low beams can be switched off in the low speed range.

Press the button on the light switch.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P	Right roadside parking light on.
P	Left roadside parking light off.

Switching off the roadside parking light:

Press the button on the light switch or turn on drive-ready state.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are switched on for a limited time.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime driving lights

General information

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on the national-market version: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights, rear"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating

Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Principle

The Automatic High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

The Automatic High Beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

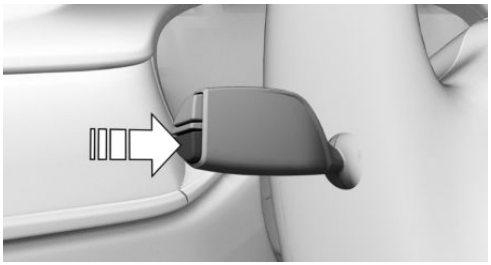
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating Automatic High Beam Assistant

1. AUTO Press the button on the light switch.

   The LED in the button illuminates.
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system switches on the high beams.

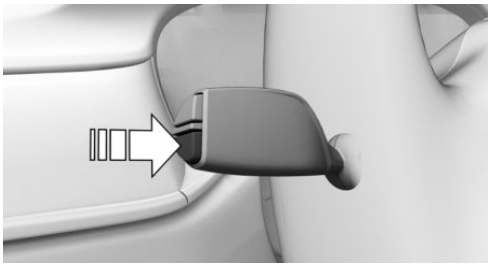
Interruption of journey with activated Automatic High Beam Assistant: the Automatic High Beam Assistant remains activated when driving continues.

The Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the Automatic High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

OwnersManuals2.com

Deactivating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Functional requirements

- Setting at standstill only.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- Light is turned off.

Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The Automatic High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. When appropriate, dim the high beams manually.

The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to set the brightness.

OwnersManuals2.com

Setting the brightness

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Turning interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

Turning reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

OwnersManuals2.com

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

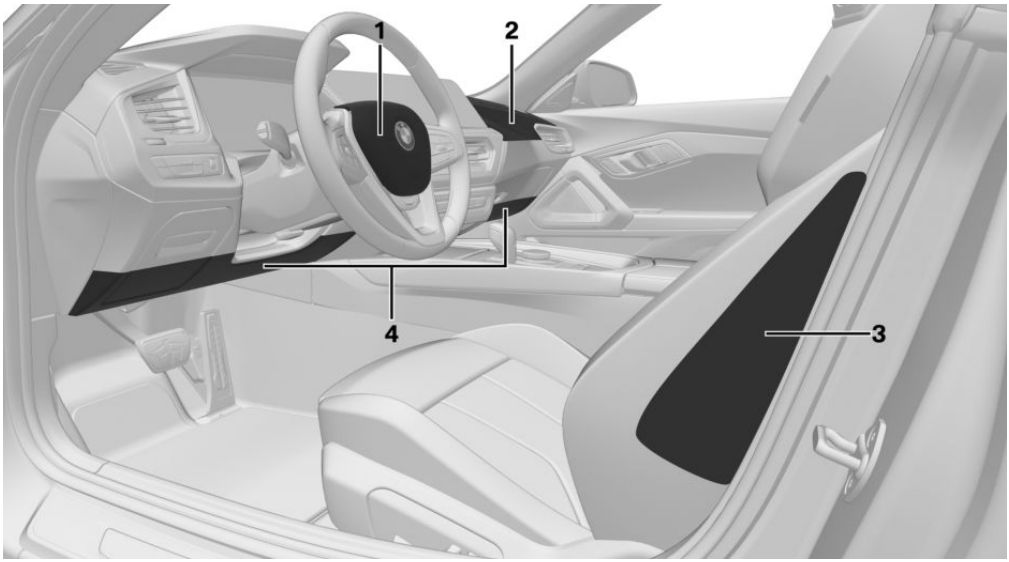
OwnersManuals2.com

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Side airbag
4 Knee airbag

Front airbags

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest, lap, and head area.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

OwnersManuals2.com

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten the seat belts correctly.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing such as jackets over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

OwnersManuals2.com

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- ▷ Warning light does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▷ The warning light illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may be not operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 108.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

The front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

OwnersManuals2.com

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to establish the desired condition, do not transport the person in the front passenger seat.

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light shortly illuminates and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator light illuminates when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the passenger's side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the passenger's side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbags illuminates. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent the risk of imminent collision.

- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 173.
- ▷ Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.
- ▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 178.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 181.
- ▷ Rear-end collision preparation, refer to page 183.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Settings

The following settings can be selected for Intelligent Safety systems:

- "ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.
- "INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.
- "Configure INDIVIDUAL": Intelligent Safety systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and stored. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.
- "ALL OFF": All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Display

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Switching Intelligent Safety systems on/off

General information

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Operation

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": Configure Intelligent Safety systems individually if required.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

- ▷ "ALL ON"
- ▷ "INDIVIDUAL"

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

"ALL OFF": The menu is selected. All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Forward Collision Warning with braking function

Principle

The Forward Collision Warning warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently. In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be is-

OwnersManuals2.com

sued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching Forward Collision Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Turning the system on/off manually

Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 171.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Early"
   - "Medium"
   - "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

Warning with brake function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display as applicable.

Icon	Measure
	Warning light illuminates red: Advance warning. Brake and increase distance.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This prewarning is provided, for instance when there is impending risk of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with brake function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent risk of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Actively intervene if an acute warning is given, e.g., apply brakes. Depending on the driving situation and the equipment version, the acute

OwnersManuals2.com

warning may be accompanied by a brief activation of the braking system.

With the warning time setting "Late" the brief activation of the braking system is omitted.

If an acute warning is provided, the system may also provide assistance such as through automatic brake intervention when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prewarning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

The system may also assist with brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a brake intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief activation of the braking system. No automatic delay occurs.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

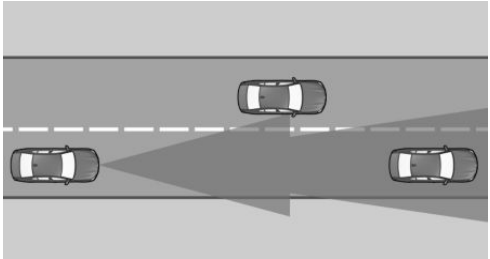
System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection capability is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated

OwnersManuals2.com

temporarily. The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below this value again.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings and responses.

Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation

Principle

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation warns the driver of a risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists, and brakes automatically if necessary. In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

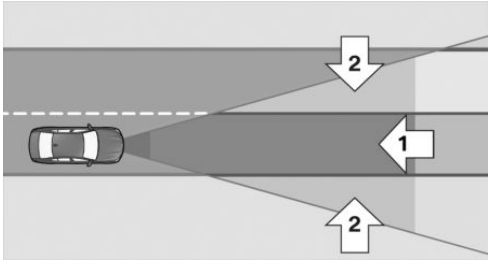
OwnersManuals2.com

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons, e.g., pedestrians or cyclists, are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Turning the system on/off manually

Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 171.

Warning with brake function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist, a warning light is shown on the instrument cluster and Head-up display as applicable.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning light illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision detected.
	Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a brake intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Detection range

The system's detection capability is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially hidden persons.
- Persons that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Persons outside of the detection range.
- Persons having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be restricted or not available in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Lane departure warning

Principle

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

Depending on the equipment version, if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane boundary is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the lane departure warning to be active.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning the system on/off manually

Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 171.

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when purposely driving over pathway lines in curves or with dynamic passing without a turn signal.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems.

Switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for Active Blind Spot Detection and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

OwnersManuals2.com

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light illuminates green: System is switched on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued. The system can perform steering interventions.
	Indicator light flashes green: System is performing a steering intervention.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: if, in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane boundary is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time. During an active steering intervention, the display in the instrument cluster will flash.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- ▷ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▷ When flashing.
- ▷ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▷ In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▷ Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- ▷ When actively merging back to your own lane after passing.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, a continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▷ When returning to your own lane.
- ▷ With hard accelerating or braking.
- ▷ With hazard warning system switched on.
- ▷ When flashing.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- Lane boundaries are not detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

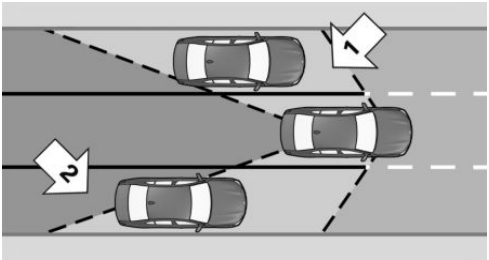
Active Blind Spot Detection

Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns the driver at different levels.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

Turning the system on/off manually

Follow instructions for settings, display, and operation in the Intelligent Safety chapter.

Additional information:

Intelligent Safety, refer to page 171.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems.

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Prewarning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn signal is activated while a vehicle is in your hazard area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Warning light flashing

When the vehicle is unlocked, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes for self-testing purposes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

Displaying warnings

Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

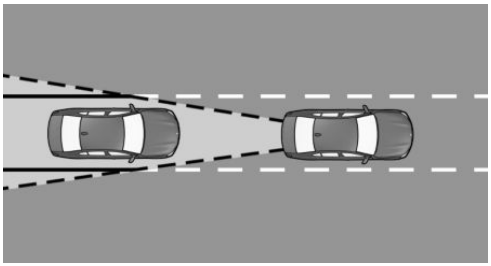
Rear-end collision preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the rear-end collision preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

OwnersManuals2.com

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- ▷ Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- ▷ Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by radar sensors on the sides at the rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning rear-end collision preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated when reversing.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

This function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

General information

The PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

OwnersManuals2.com

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than automatic braking allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the brake pressure will be higher than the brake pressure that is achieved by the automatic brake function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Canceling automatic braking

It may be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance when making an evasive maneuver.

Cancel automatic braking:

- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. The system recommends a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After starting the trip, the system is trained to the driver, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes, for example, the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

The system is active starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

Break recommendation

Setting break recommendation

The break recommendation can be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

System functionality may be limited. If the function is limited, either no warning may be

OwnersManuals2.com

issued or an unwarranted warning may be issued. The system function may be limited in the following situations, e.g.:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ At a predominantly driven speed below approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▷ When the road condition is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels while braking.

You remain able to steer your vehicle even during full braking, which increases active driving safety.

General information

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each engine start.

Malfunction

The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.

A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ The Antilock Braking System is not available.

▷ Steerability is limited during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The drive-off assistant supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
2. Release the brake pedal and drive off quickly.

After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

In order to prevent rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1. Pull and release switch before driving off.

   The parking brake is set.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

The Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake intervention on individual wheels.

General information

The Dynamic Stability Control will detect, e.g., the following unstable driving conditions:

- ▷ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating the Dynamic Stability Control

General information

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is limited when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Deactivating the system

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating the system

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light turn off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Display

In the instrument cluster

If the Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake power.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed.

Dynamic Traction Control

Principle

The Dynamic Traction Control is a variant of the Driving Stability Control where the drive power is optimized.

The system ensures maximum drive power on unusual road conditions, for instance unplowed snow covered roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

The vehicle has maximum traction when Dynamic Traction Control is on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when cornering.

A brief activation of the Dynamic Traction Control may be useful in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating the Dynamic Traction Control

Activating the system

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF illuminates.

Deactivating the system

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light turn off.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

When the Dynamic Traction Control is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator light

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

OwnersManuals2.com

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically:

- ▷ The Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function is activated.
- ▷ On a brake intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.

M sport differential

The M Sport differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential, depending on the driving situation. It prevents a single rear wheel from spinning and depending on the situation, increases the drive power of the wheel with greater road grip. This significantly improves the traction and driving dynamics of the vehicle.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Variable sport steering

The variable sports steering facilitates direct and agile handling with little steering effort. The variable sports steering works independently of the current speed, varying the steering gear ratio in line with the steering angle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with extra traffic signs are always displayed.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

OwnersManuals2.com

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
SPEED LIMIT 30 50 km/h	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement. Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of distance traveled.
- - - LIMIT	No data for the current speed limit available. The displays may vary depending on vehicle equipment.
LIMIT	Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

Warning signals

Depending on the settings, an acoustic signal sounds if the detected speed limit is exceeded or the speed limit changes. The display also flashes if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Settings

Individual settings can be configured for Speed Limit Info, e.g., warnings issued if the speed is exceeded or the permissible maximum speed changes.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"

OwnersManuals2.com

4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. Select the desired setting.

The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assistant settings.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 205.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ For traffic signs that are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▷ When the traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▷ In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
LIM	System on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit.

Operation

Turning on

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

If the system is switched on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, the speed limit is set to 20 mph/30 km/h.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and the vehicle may change to COMFORT drive mode.

OwnersManuals2.com

Turning off

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

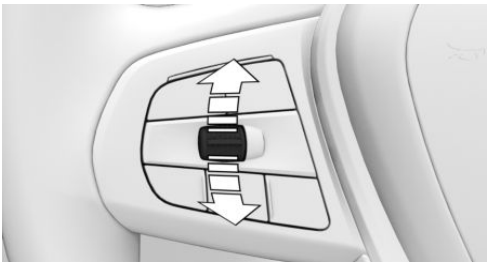
- When the engine is switched off.
- When Cruise Control is switched on.
- When certain programs are activated via the Driving Experience Control.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

If the reverse gear is engaged or in Neutral, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

LIM If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

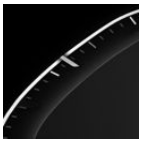
- If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- When the speed limit is reduced to below the current vehicle speed, the signal sounds after some time.
- When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

OwnersManuals2.com



- Green marking: system is active.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
LIM	The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.
LIM	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- With high traffic volume.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all In-

OwnersManuals2.com

telligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
RESUME	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt cruise control.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Turning on

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually

CANCEL When active, press the button.

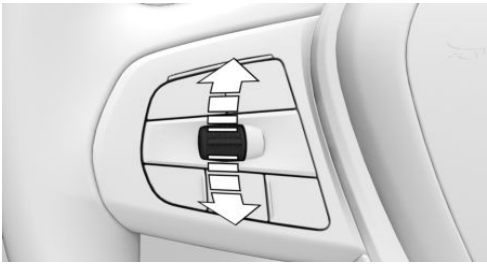
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When braking manually.
- Manual transmission: the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- Manual transmission: if the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



OwnersManuals2.com

Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

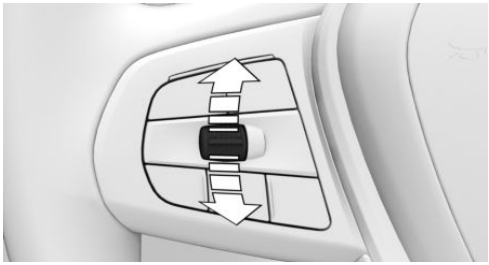
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

⚠ Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

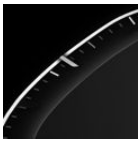
In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function

Principle

Using the Cruise Control, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt cruise control.
	Increase the distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Reduce distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

OwnersManuals2.com

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Turning on/off and interrupting cruise control

Turning on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off

To switch off the system while stationary, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

Button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel:

Button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

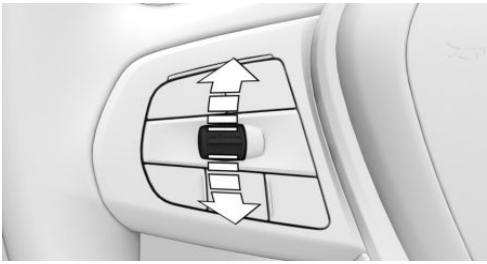
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When braking manually.
- Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.
- The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

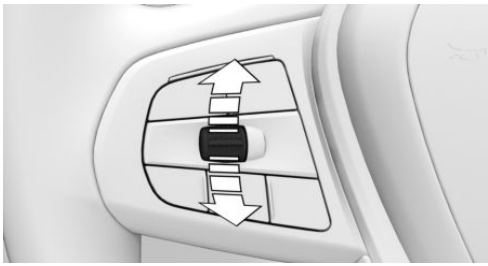
If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

OwnersManuals2.com

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reducing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Increasing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted:

RESUME Button on the steering wheel.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Switching Cruise Control without Distance Control off and on:

▷ Press and hold this button.

▷ Press and hold this button.

Switching on distance control:

▷ Press the button.

▷ Press the button.

After changing, a Check Control message is displayed.

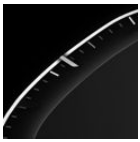
Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.



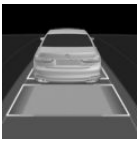
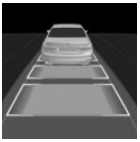
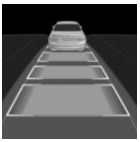
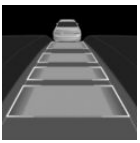
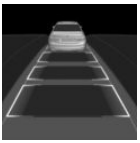
▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.

▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

▷ No marking: system is switched off.

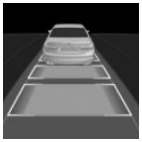
Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Icon	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

OwnersManuals2.com

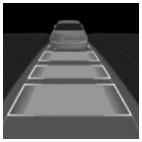
Detected vehicle

Icon	Description
	Green icon: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle icon in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, drive off on your own such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle icon flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle icon and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

Distance information

The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-up display selected.
  Head-up display, refer to page 158.
- ▷ Distance too short.
- ▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

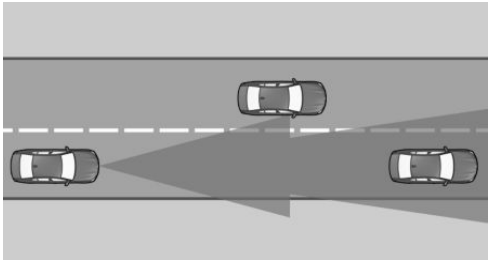
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

OwnersManuals2.com

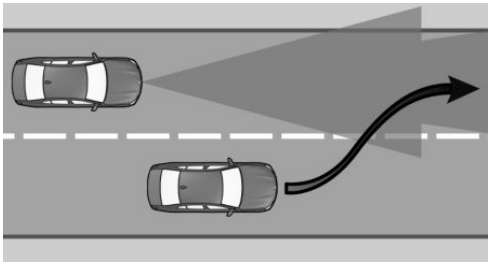
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

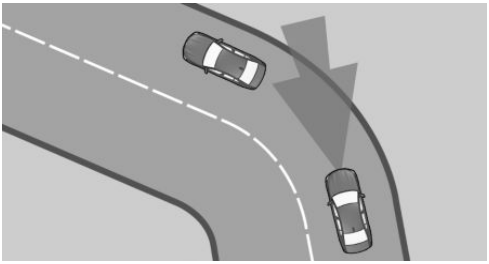
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment and national availability, for red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



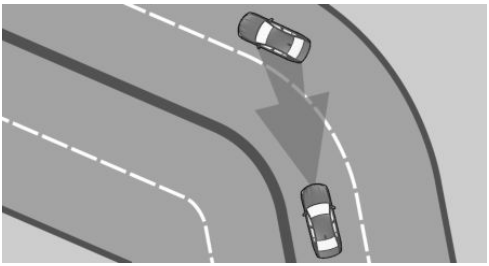
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

OwnersManuals2.com

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"

OwnersManuals2.com

6. "Speed limits"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
   - ▷ "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
   - ▷ "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
   - ▷ "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

Icon	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system: Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

SET When the SET icon illuminates, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

General information

You can configure a speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for the speed adaptation that affects all speeds.
   - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": With additional speed adjustment activated, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

OwnersManuals2.com

Upcoming speed limits can only be accepted for the Active Cruise Control.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page 193.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 35.

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems help the driver when parking, maneuvering, or reversing by providing various assistance functions, sensors, and camera views.

Additional information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 210.
- ▷ Side protection, refer to page 211.
- ▷ Rearview camera without Surround View, refer to page 212.
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, driving out of parking space, refer to page 219.
- ▷ Back-up Assistant, refer to page 220.
- ▷ Cross traffic warning, refer to page 222.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side protection.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

OwnersManuals2.com

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Turning on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ With the engine running, when selector lever position R is engaged.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles at a speed lower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain distance travelled or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED illuminates.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. If, for example, an object is detected at the front left of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the front left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance

OwnersManuals2.com

smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and continuous tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on design version, the intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

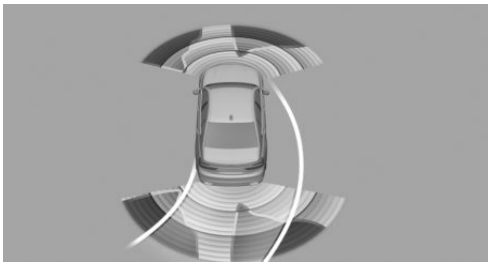
If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Volume

The volume of the Park Distance Control acoustic signals can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the control display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the control display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as the Park Distance Control is activated.

The detection range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the space required.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, you can switch to the Park Distance Control or to a different view with obstacle markings if necessary:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, you will be warned in the Park Distance Control display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 222.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 37.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.

▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the

OwnersManuals2.com

sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction

White icon is displayed, and the detection range of the sensors is dimmed on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control malfunction. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.

Temporary switching off

The Park Distance Control brake function can be temporarily switched off:

Confirm the message on the control display.

During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

OwnersManuals2.com

3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

Side protection

Principle

The side protection warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

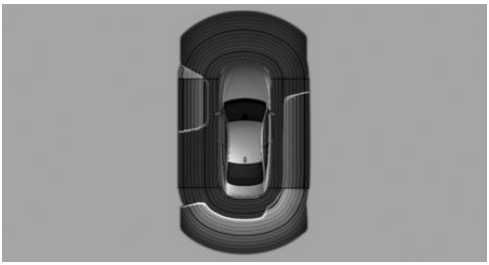
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color marks: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray marks, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No marks, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the marks are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

In addition, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rearview camera

Principle

The rearview camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

▷ Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Turning on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain distance travelled or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED illuminates.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the control display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

▷ The trunk lid is fully closed.

▷ Keep the detection range of the camera open. Protruding cargo, a rear-mounted

OwnersManuals2.com

luggage rack or trailer can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the control display

Toolbars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the toolbars on the sides of the control display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. ▷ "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning circle lines are displayed.

   ▷ "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the equipment, the obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are displayed by marks.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

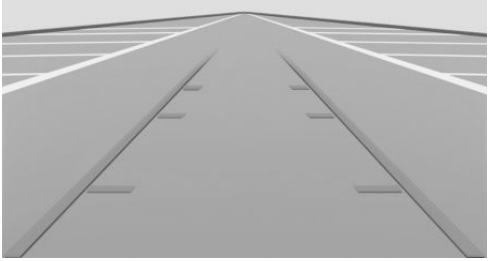
Parking aid lines

General information

Additional assistance functions can be shown in the camera image on the control display.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

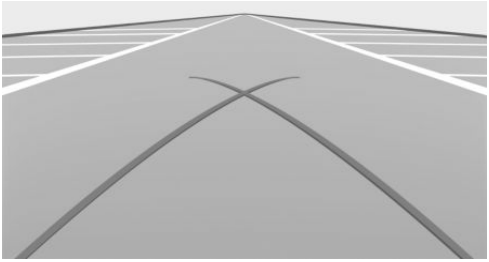
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

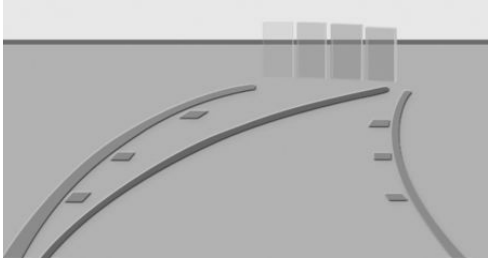
Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking using lanes and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored steps of the obstacle markings match the marks of the Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk lid is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

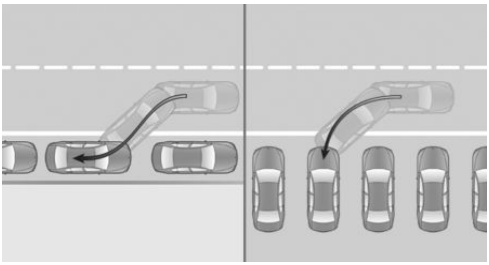
Depending on the equipment, some assistance functions also take into account data from the Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle



The Automatic Parking Assistant supports the driver in the following situations:

OwnersManuals2.com

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking perpendicular to the road, perpendicular parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space.
- Depending on the equipment version: when driving out of parallel parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

General information

Operating principle

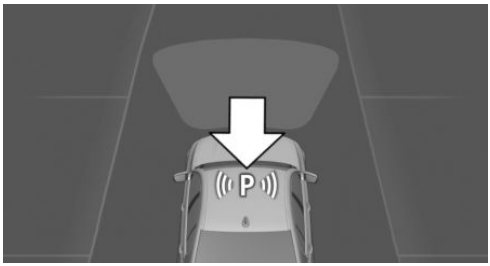
The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- Parking space search.
- Turning on.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the control display.

Parking space search

Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the control display are shown in gray.



(P) The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated and the parking space search is active.

Control display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle icon. When Automatic Parking Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

Manual transmission

The Automatic Parking Assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking operation.

Steptronic transmission

The Automatic Parking Assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Acceleration and braking.
- Changing gears.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety instructions of the Park Distance Control apply.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

For the measurement of parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

Longitudinal parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle: approx. 3.3 ft/1 m
- Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle: approx. 3.3 ft/1 m
- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking operation

- Doors and trunk lid are closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Turning on/turning off

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED illuminates.

OwnersManuals2.com

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the control display.

Automatic Parking Assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the control display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

The display of the rearview camera or the view of the Park Distance Control must be active.

1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the Automatic Parking Assistant on the control display: "Autom. Parking"

Turning off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

The LED goes out.

Status of the system

Icon	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.

Turning the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

Acoustic signals of the Park Distance Control

Depending on national-market version, an intermittent tone for Park Distance Control sounds during an automatic parking operation.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. For the parking space search, drive past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The parking space search is activated.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display.
2. Engage reverse or press the Park Assist key.

   The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.
3. Select the suggested parking space for the parking maneuver on the control display.

   The parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   Manual transmission:

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering operation.

   Steptronic transmission:

OwnersManuals2.com

At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- ▷ Press the park assistance button.
- ▷ "Autom. Parking": select the icon on the control display.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- ▷ The Park Distance Control indicates distances that are too small.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ When changing over to another function on the control display.
- ▷ The turn signal opposite to the desired parking side is switched on.

Manual transmission:

- ▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the control display.
- ▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ If the trunk lid is open.
- ▷ If doors are open.
- ▷ When setting the parking brake.
- ▷ During acceleration.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains depressed for longer while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- ▷ When unfastening the driver's seat belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Continuing the parking operation

An interrupted parking operation can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the Automatic Parking Assistant and follow the instructions on the control display.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- ▷ For diagonal parking spaces.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant has malfunctioned. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle

The system makes driving out of parallel parking spaces easier.

General information

Note the information given in the “Automatic Parking Assistant” section.

Manual transmission

The Automatic Parking Assistant calculates the ideal line for pulling out of the parking space and takes over the steering during this maneuver until the driver can drive out of the parking space without further steering movements without a problem.

Steptronic transmission

The Automatic Parking Assistant calculates an optimal line for pulling out of a parking space and takes control of the following functions during the maneuver:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

The vehicle maneuvers automatically until the vehicle reaches a position in which the driver can drive out of the parking space without further steering movements.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle was parked manually and objects in front of and behind the car are detected. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- ▷ The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Parking Assistant and an object is detected in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle has been parked in reverse.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Manual transmission:

   Press the Automatic Parking Assistant button when the vehicle is stationary to switch on the Automatic Parking Assistant.

   Steptronic transmission:

   Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary to switch on the Automatic Parking Assistant.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right and activate the Automatic Parking Assistant on the control display: "Autom. Parking"
4. Select the desired direction to drive out of the parking space on the control display.
5. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   The parking operation is active.

   Manual transmission:

   The system takes control of the steering when maneuvering in the parking space. A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.

   Steptronic transmission:

   The system takes control of the maneuver. A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.
6. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of parking space and driving off as usual.

   The Automatic Parking Assistant is turned off automatically.

System limits

The driving out of a parking space function may not be offered temporarily under certain environmental conditions. The system limits of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant continue to apply.

Back-up assistant

Principle

The Back-up Assistant helps the driver when reversing, e.g., when driving out of tight or unclear parking or road situations.

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance covered can be driven back with automated steering.

General information

The system takes control of the steering when driving in reverse along the stored route.

The driver controls driving the vehicle via accelerator pedal and brake.

The Back-up Assistant uses the operating elements and sensors of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Additional information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Check surrounding traffic and vehicle's surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, the safety information for the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 214.

Functional requirements

- Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- A maximum of 165 ft/50 meters are stored.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/36 km/h.
- Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Back-up Assistant"

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display where required.
5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   When driving in reverse, pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings, and if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.
6. Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle such as by shifting to a forward gear.

   At the end of the stored distance travelled, a signal will sound and a request will be displayed, also with the instruction to take control of the vehicle.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

- Via touchscreen: "Back-up Assistant"
- Press the button.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When engaging a forward gear.
- During activation or intervention by driving control systems or assist systems.
- After a few minutes when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle leaves the stored lane when reversing, for instance at maximum steering angle.
- The view on the control display is overlaid with messages such as incoming calls.

OwnersManuals2.com

System limits

- When you reach normal road traffic or if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
- The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be canceled.
- After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be limited for the return trip.
- In addition, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

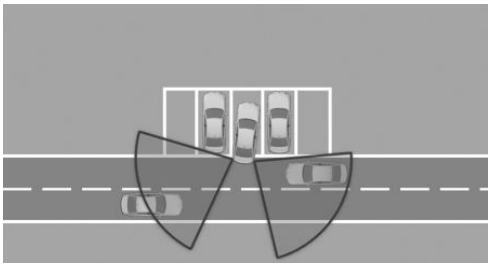
- Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- Certain road characteristics such as gradients or inclines.

Cross traffic warning

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching road users.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

OwnersManuals2.com

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Turning on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic warning"
5. "Cross traffic warning"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross traffic warning"
6. "Cross traffic warning"

Turning on automatically

If the system was activated on the control display, it will automatically be turned on as soon as the Park Distance Control or the Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- When a certain distance travelled is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Warning

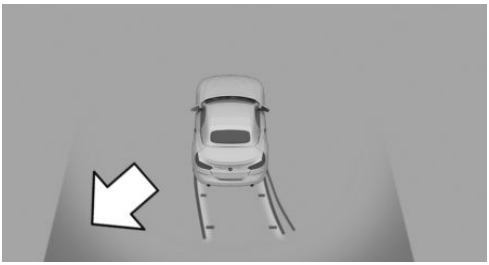
General information

The control display shows the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound as necessary, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors detect other vehicles when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

OwnersManuals2.com

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- ▷ Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its application range and thereby ensure the best possible driving experience.

Adaptive M chassis

Principle

The Adaptive M chassis is an intelligent, controllable sport chassis.

The chassis reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

General information

The intelligent control of the chassis increases the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

Setting

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorbers are adjusted depending on the selected driving mode as well as the road condition and driving style.

Additional information:

Driving Experience Control, refer to page 138.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, you can configure the sound of the engine.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

OwnersManuals2.com

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emission tested passenger compartment.
- ▷ Interior filter.
- ▷ Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- ▷ Pre-ventilation.
- ▷ Automatic recirculated-air control.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

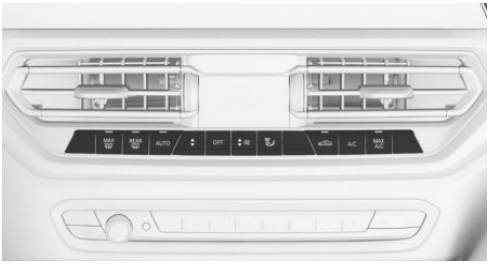
- ▷ Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- ▷ Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- ▷ Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- ▷ Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate control functions

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.
AUTO	AUTO program.
▲ ▼	Temperature.
OFF	Switching off.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.

OwnersManuals2.com

Button	Function
	Air recirculation mode.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Seat heating, refer to page 116.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Switching climate control functions on/off

Turning on

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air conditioning.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Air recirculation mode.
- ▷ Air flow, manual.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.
- ▷ Defrosting the windshield

Turning off

Complete system:

OFF Press the button until the automatic climate control switches off.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

Setting the temperature

Using the button:

Press the upper or lower button side to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly change between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Principle

The air in the interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Functional requirement

The interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switch air conditioning on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the air conditioning is switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the cooling mode, condensation that will exit below the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Maximum cooling

Principle

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

Functional requirement

The system is available at outside temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching maximum cooling on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when maximum cooling is switched on.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. The air vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the program active.

AUTO program

Principle

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air flow, air distribution and the temperature will be controlled automatically depending on the interior temperature and the setting for the desired temperature.

Switching the AUTO program on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

Point the side air vents toward the side windows.

The air conditioning is switched on with the AUTO program.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Switch air recirculation on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the air-recirculation mode is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Air recirculation"
   - ▷ "Fresh air"

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a cer-

OwnersManuals2.com

tain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant air recirculation mode, the air quality in the interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Principle

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Press the lower or upper side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate control display.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Manual air distribution

Principle

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area, and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

Defrost function

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching the Defrost function on/off

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

If there is any window condensation, switch on the AUTO program or the air conditioning. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Principle

Ice and condensation are removed from the rear window quickly.

Functional requirement

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching rear window defroster on/off

Press the button. The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

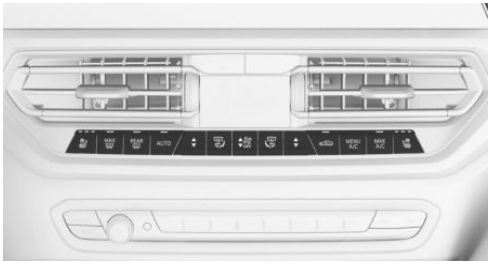
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

OwnersManuals2.com

Automatic climate control with enhanced features

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate control functions

Button	Function
▲ ▼	Temperature.
	Air recirculation mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
OFF	Air flow, manual. Switching off. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.
	Seat heating, refer to page 116.
MENU A/C	Air conditioning. Open Climate menu such as for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, pre-ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU A/C Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

For example, the following climate control functions can be accessed via the Climate menu:

- ▷ Air quality.
- ▷ Heating/ventilation.
- ▷ Pre-ventilation/heating
- ▷ Air conditioning.

Individual settings can be entered for some of the climate functions, e.g., switching on/off, intensity.

Switching climate control functions on/off

Turning on

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Climate menu.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Air recirculation mode.
- ▷ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.

OwnersManuals2.com

▷ Air distribution, manual.
▷ Defrosting the windshield

Turning off

Complete system:

Press and hold the button until the integrated automatic climate control switches off.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

Setting the temperature

Using the button:

Press the upper or lower button side to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.
8. "OK"

Do not rapidly change between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body area heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjust temperature of the ventilation

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Temperature adjustment"
6. Set the desired temperature.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

Air conditioning

Principle

The air in the interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Functional requirement

The interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switch air conditioning on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "A/C"

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the cooling mode, condensation that will exit below the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

Functional requirement

The function is available at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching maximum cooling on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when maximum cooling is switched on.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. The air vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the program active.

AUTO program

Principle

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and the temperature are controlled automatically depending on the interior temperature and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching the AUTO program on/off

Using the button:

AUTO Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

Point the side air vents toward the side windows.

The air conditioning is switched on with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Adjusting the intensity of the air flow

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Using the button:

OFF Press the lower or upper side of the button: decrease or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

OwnersManuals2.com

The selected intensity is shown on the climate control display.

Automatic recirculated-air control

Principle

The automatic recirculated-air control recognizes pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the interior.

With constant air recirculation mode, the air quality in the interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Switching automatic recirculated-air control on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Automatic"

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Switch air recirculation on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the air-recirculation mode is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Air recirculation"
   - ▷ "Fresh air"

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant air recirculation mode, the air quality in the interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Principle

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Press the lower or upper side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate control display.

OwnersManuals2.com

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Manual air distribution

Principle

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area, and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body area.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

SYNC program

Principle

The Sync program can be used to apply the settings on the driver's side to the passenger's side.

Switching the SYNC program on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Synchronize"

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the passenger's side:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO program.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side are changed.

Defrost function

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching the Defrost function on/off

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

If there is window condensation, switch on the AUTO program or the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Principle

Ice and condensation are removed from the rear window quickly.

Functional requirement

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching rear window defroster on/off

Press the button. The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

OwnersManuals2.com

Ventilation

Principle

The air flow directions can be adjusted individually for direct or indirect ventilation.

Setting the ventilation

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

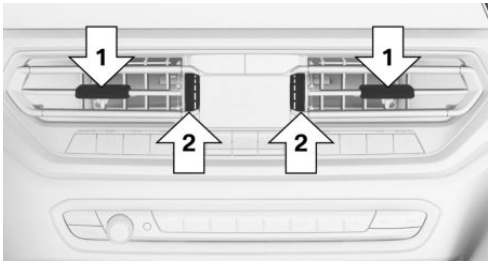
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The vehicle interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▷ Open the air vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using the button

Functional requirement

When the vehicle is in standby state, the pre-ventilation can be switched on or off with the automatic climate control buttons.

Turning on

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air conditioning.
- ▷ Maximum cooling.
- ▷ AUTO program.
- ▷ Air recirculation mode.
- ▷ Upper side of the air flow, manual button.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.
- ▷ Defrosting the windshield

Turning off

Press and hold the bottom button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

Turning on

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Display

Icon	Description
	Icon on the climate control display. Flashing: the pre-ventilation is switched on.

Departure time

Principle

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▷ One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- ▷ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

To switch on the pre-ventilation automatically at the departure time, the departure time must be activated first.

OwnersManuals2.com

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Icon on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on stationary climate control in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When stationary climate control is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during stationary climate control operation, e.g. leaves, grass, gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.
- The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Air vents are opened.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled once before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

OwnersManuals2.com

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Remote Engine Start"
6. "Starting engine for clim. control"
7. Confirm the disclaimer.

Switching on/off directly

General information

The system switches off automatically after approx. 15 minutes.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Switching off with the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly as follows: pressing the Start/Stop button, without depressing the brake pedal.

Switching on via departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- ▷ One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- ▷ Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure times.

The climate control function will start approximately 10 minutes before the set departure time and continue for approximately 5 more minutes after the departure time.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on once. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For Your Own Safety, refer to page 8.

OwnersManuals2.com

Adjusting the departure time via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Departure plan"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

The icon on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.

The icon flashes while Remote Engine Start is running.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

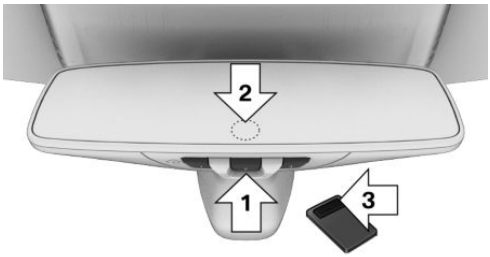
Additional questions are answered by:

- ▷ An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

OwnersManuals2.com

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Initial commissioning:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED illuminates green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the operating instructions for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating instructions to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

OwnersManuals2.com

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can illuminate in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED illuminates green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

⚠ Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

The system such as the garage door can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays illuminated while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

OwnersManuals2.com

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green fast.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.

Folding in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

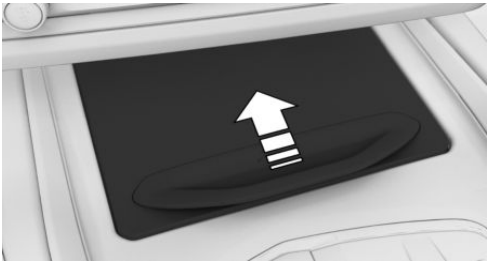
Warning

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

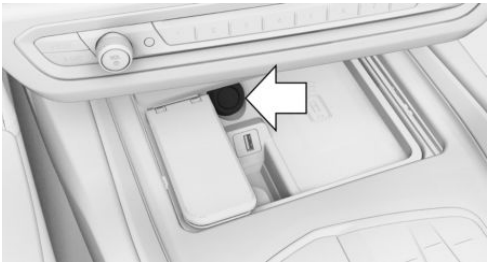
OwnersManuals2.com

Center console

1. Slide the cover forward.



2. The socket is located next to the wireless charging tray. Detach the cover.



USB port

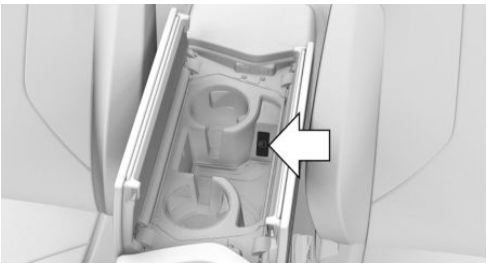
General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 77.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

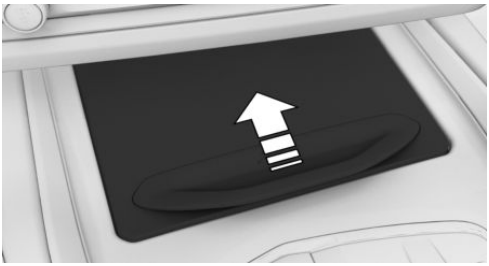
Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

In the center console

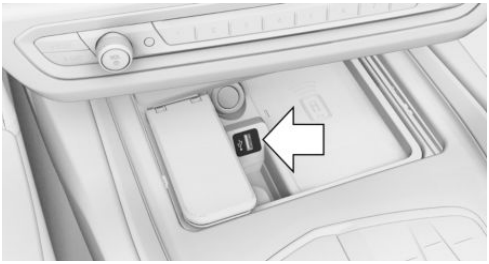
⚠ NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.



Slide the cover forward.

OwnersManuals2.com



The USB port is located next to the wireless charging tray.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type A.
- ▷ For charging of external devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 1.5 A
- ▷ For data transfer.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

General information

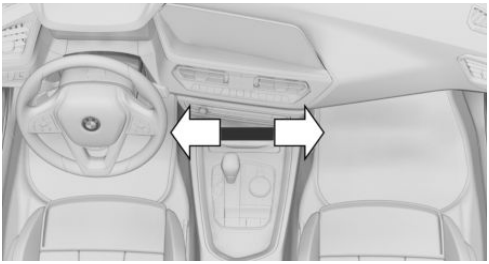
When inserting the device to be charged, ensure that there are no objects between the device to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

((⚡)) The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

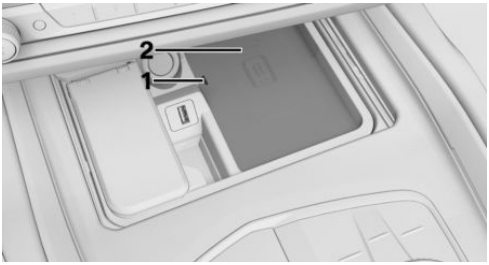
Safety information

⚠ Warning

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects on the tray together with the device can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards that transmit signals, are placed on the tray together with the device, they may not function correctly. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray together with the device.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

OwnersManuals2.com

Functional requirements

- The device to be charged must be certified according to the Qi standard.
- Standby state is switched on.
- The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The mobile phone display is pointing upwards.

Inserting the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature of the mobile phone may be too high or foreign object may be in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

A warning can be given if a Qi-certified mobile phone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Activate reminder"

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures on the surface of the tray and mobile phone.
- If there are objects between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.
- If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the mobile phone and wireless charging tray.
- Due to protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm
- Due to protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g., with magnetic parts.
- Due to add-on parts for mobile phone, e.g., holders.
- By settings on the mobile phone, for instance for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

OwnersManuals2.com

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignalbooster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

OwnersManuals2.com

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable such as mobile phones or loose objects can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

Warning

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Fold-out compartment

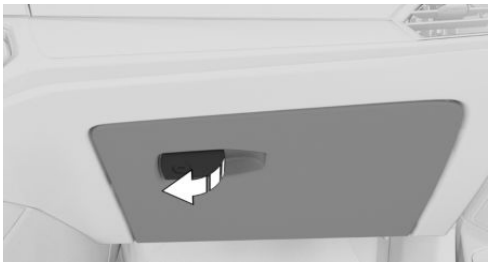
Opening the fold-out compartment

Pull the handle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Glove compartment

Opening the glove compartment



Pull the handle.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment has been locked, the vehicle key can be given to someone without the integrated key, for example, when the car is being parked by a parking attendant.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Storage compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

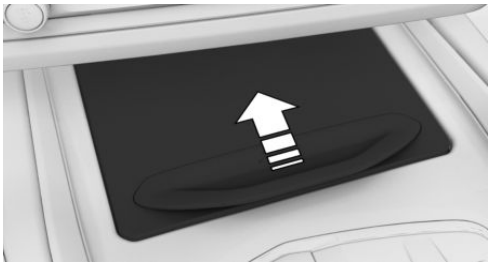
Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening the storage compartment



Slide the cover forward.

Closing the storage compartment

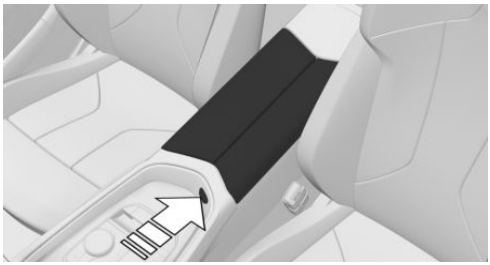
Pull the cover on the handle back.

Center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the storage compartment



Press the button.

OwnersManuals2.com

The lighting of the center armrest switches on.

Closing the storage compartment

Press the lid down until it clicks into place.

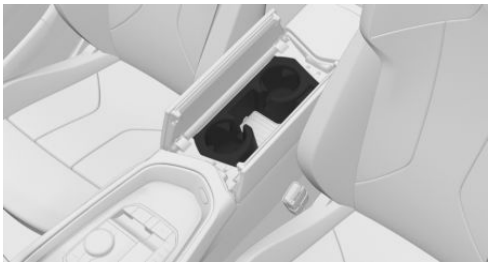
Cup holders

Safety information

Warning

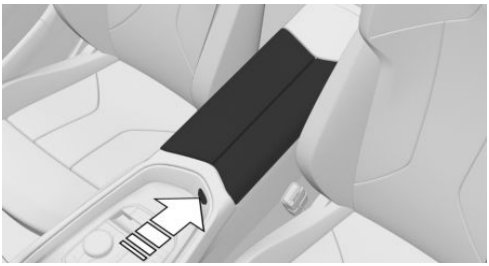
Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Overview



The cup holders are located in the center armrest.

Opening the storage compartment



Press the button.

The lighting of the center armrest switches on.

Closing the storage compartment

Press the lid down until it clicks into place.

Storage compartment behind the seats

Safety information

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

General information

There is a storage compartment behind the seats.

OwnersManuals2.com

Adjusting the net

Slide the upper edge of the net up to the correct height. Grab the top of the net as close as possible to the edge next to the holder. At first, a resistance must be overcome.

OwnersManuals2.com

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load-carrying capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable such as mobile phones or loose objects can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for determining correct load limit

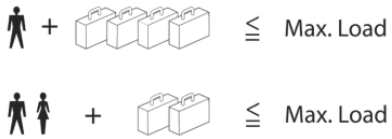
1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on the vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the

OwnersManuals2.com

available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If the vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to the vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of the vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

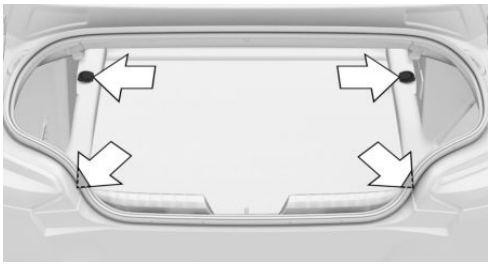
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the cargo partition wall.
- ▷ Fasten the aids for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with luggage straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side. To transport larger objects, slide the net down. Grab the top of the net as close as possible to the edge next to the holder. At first, a resistance must be overcome.

A storage compartment is located in the cargo floor panel behind the net.

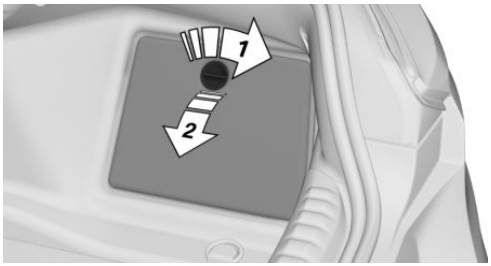
OwnersManuals2.com

Storage compartment on the right side

General information

A storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Opening the storage compartment



Unlock the cover of the right side trim panel, arrow 1, and fold open, arrow 2.

Through-loading system

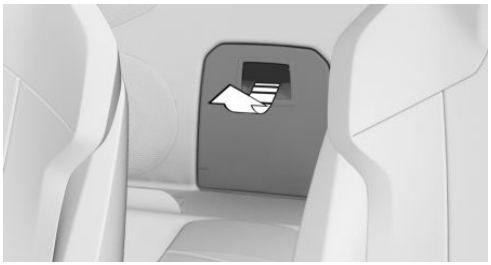
Principle

The through-loading system allows the transport of long objects such as skis.

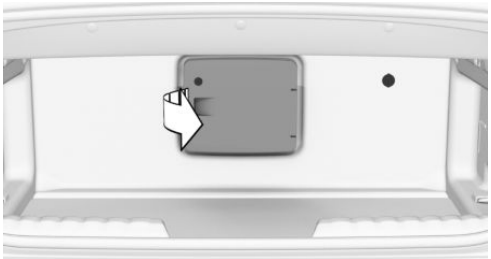
Opening the through-loading system

1. Slide the net down. Grab the top of the net as close as possible to the edge next to the holder. At first, a resistance must be overcome.

2. Pull on the handle and fold the flap down.



3. In the cargo area: open flap completely. The flap is secured with a magnet.



OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks and brake pads must be run in to avoid possible brake noise. Drive cautiously for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

OwnersManuals2.com

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the trunk lid open:

- ▷ If the convertible top is closed, close all windows.
- ▷ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Ice on window glass

NOTICE

The window will be lowered slightly when pulling on the door handle. In the event of frost, the window may be frozen solid and may not be able to be lowered. There is a risk of damage to property. When pulling on the door handle, make sure that the window is lowered. If necessary, remove snow and ice from the window. Do not open the door with force.

Hot exhaust system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

Warning

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Mobile radio in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile communication devices. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior only use mobile communication devices such as mobile phones with a direct connection to an external antenna or the Personal eSIM in order to prevent mutual interference and to deflect radiation from the vehicle interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

OwnersManuals2.com

This phenomenon is referred to as aquaplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform emergency braking when appropriate. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

The pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake disks can emit function-related noises. However, function-related noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Other-

OwnersManuals2.com

wise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motorsport-like competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the “New Vehicle Limited Warranty” Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Before and after driving on a racetrack, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

The fuel consumption depends on various factors such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Carrying out certain measures such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and the environmental pollution.

Removing unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing attached parts following use

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Closing the windows

Open windows increase drag and therefore lead to greater fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Checking the tire pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance and thus fuel consumption and tire wear.

Observe the correct tire inflation pressure as well as the ECO tire inflation pressure, where applicable.

Additional information:

Tire pressure specifications, refer to page 268.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate RPM.

This is the fastest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Anticipatory driving

A smooth and anticipatory driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Maintain a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high RPM

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using coasting/overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in coasting/overrun mode.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic jam.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of an engine stop.

Switching off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and with stop-and-go driving.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features.

These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Having maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by an authorized service center.

Also refer to BMW Maintenance System.

ECO PRO

Principle

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Steptronic transmission: under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling in Neutral to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, situational information and ECO PRO tips are displayed to help promote a power-saving driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range.
- ▷ ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ▷ ECO PRO climate control.
- ▷ ECO PRO light and sight.
- ▷ ECO PRO speed.
- ▷ Coasting mode.
- ▷ Driving style analysis.

OwnersManuals2.com

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Experience Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

ECO PRO speed

▷ "ECO PRO speed": activate ECO PRO speed.

An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO speed is exceeded.

▷ "Notification at:"

Set the desired speed for the ECO PRO speed.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

▷ "Coasting"

▷ "ECO PRO seat heating"

▷ "ECO PRO climate control"

▷ "ECO PRO light and sight"

Coasting

Efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting in Neutral.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The activation of ECO PRO will reduce the output of the seat heating.

ECO PRO climate control

The air conditioning is adjusted.

This means it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature and heat or cool the car interior more slowly to economize on electrical consumption.

ECO PRO light and view

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

OwnersManuals2.com

ECO PRO bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension can be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

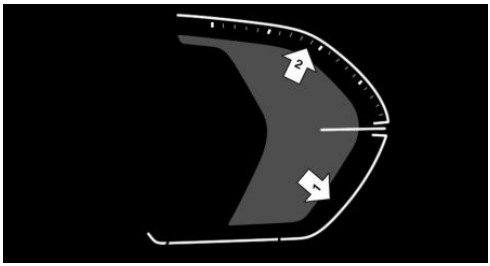
The efficiency display includes the bonus range.

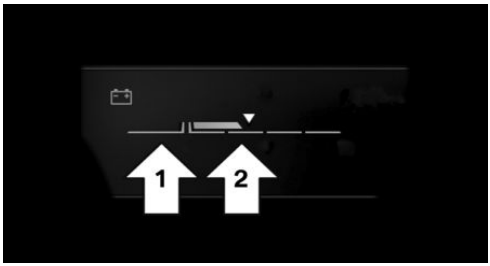
If the bonus range appears in gray, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Consumption display





A needle in the consumption display informs about the current driving style:

- The current consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- Needle in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.
- Needle in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between the average consumption and the current consumption is colored red.

In addition, the following information is displayed, depending on the situation:

- Depending on the equipment: the total distance driven in Coasting mode.
- The total time that the engine has been switched off during automatic engine stops.
- A gear shift indicator recommending the use of a more efficient gear.

Indications on the control display

General information

Information about the current operating principle of the ECO PRO functions can be displayed as energy flow.

Displaying energy flow information

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

The following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start/Stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Coasting.

Coasting

Principle

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in

OwnersManuals2.com

the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling in Neutral to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO driving mode is called via the Driving Experience Control.

An anticipatory driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

The function is active if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The accelerator pedal is not depressed or the accelerator pedal is released.
- ▷ Brake pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC, not activated.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

The Coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate Coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

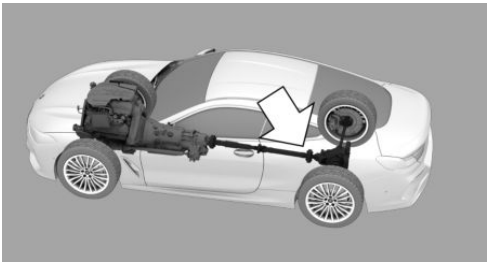
Display in the instrument cluster

The coasting distance traveled is indicated in Coasting mode.

Indications on the control display

The Coasting mode is displayed under energy flow while driving.

The distance traveled in Coasting mode is displayed in the trip data.



Color code blue: Coasting mode.

Displaying energy flow information

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

OwnersManuals2.com

- DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.

Driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the control display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed while driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the control display.

Functional requirement

This function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the control display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

OwnersManuals2.com

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the filler nozzle while refueling causes:

- ▷ Premature switching off.
- ▷ Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 300.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

⚠ NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel cap

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

OwnersManuals2.com

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.

3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed while closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum speed for driving.

On the control display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the control display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the control display.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

OwnersManuals2.com

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the control display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

The display of the current tire pressure may be limited when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

For the flat tire monitor:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

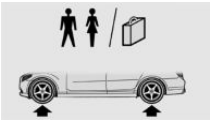
These pressure values can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

Z4 sDrive30i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
Front: 225/45 ZR 18 95 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 255/40 ZR 18 99 Y XL	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 255/40 ZR 18 95 Y	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 ZR 18 99 Y	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 255/35 ZR 19 96 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	-	2.2 / 32
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/90 R 17 104 M	4.2 / 60	

Z4 M40i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/40 ZR 18 95 Y	2.8 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 ZR 18 99 Y	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/35 ZR 19 96 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/90 R 17 104 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at maximum speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

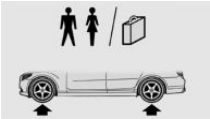
For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure

OwnersManuals2.com

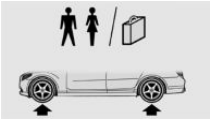
values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

Z4 sDrive30i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
Front: 255/40 ZR 18 95 Y	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 ZR 18 99 Y	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 225/45 ZR 18 95 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 255/40 ZR 18 99 Y XL	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 255/35 ZR 19 96 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	-	2.2 / 32
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/90 R 17 104 M	4.2 / 60	

Z4 M40i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/40 ZR 18 95 Y	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 ZR 18 99 Y	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/35 ZR 19 96 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/90 R 17 104 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: cross-sectional relationship in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load bearing capacity

Y: speed code letter

OwnersManuals2.com

ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 1923

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

1923: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 1923	19th week of 2023

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

OwnersManuals2.com

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Runflat tires

Runflat tires, refer to page 276, are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, can be identified by the M+S marking on the tire side wall.

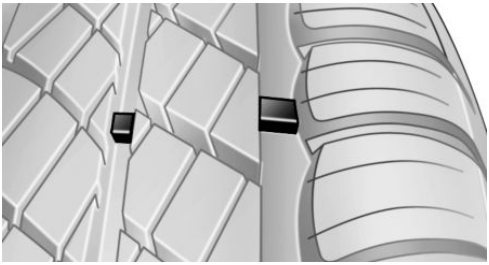
Tire tread

Safety information

Warning

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations such as aquaplaning or slush on the road. There is a risk of accident. The tire tread depth may not fall below 0.12 in/3 mm for summer tires and 0.16 in/4 mm for winter and all-season tires, or observe the statutory regulations on minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth



Distributed over the tire circumference are the tire manufacturer's wear indicators with a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm, which serve as an indicator of tire tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign bodies lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- ▷ Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. To do so, drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

⚠ Warning

Driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles can damage wheels, tires and chassis components. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There may be a risk of accidents and risk of damage to property. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable depending on vehicle and equipment. The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations on the basis of the following criteria:

- ▷ Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- ▷ Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

Ask an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about wheels and tires that are suitable for the vehicle as well as special equipment.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake disks. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Wheel/tire combinations that are not suitable to the vehicle can impair vehicle handling and a number of system functions such as the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- Handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are marked with a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use tires of the same make and tread design.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreated tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

OwnersManuals2.com

Maximum speed

Safety information

Warning

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed of the winter tires, the maximum permissible speed must be indicated with a sign placed in the field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires can be identified by the icon with mountain and snowflake, as well as the M+S marking on the tire sidewall.

All-season tires with the M+S designation, but without icon with mountain and snowflake, have better winter characteristics than summer tires but generally do not achieve the performance of winter tires.

Changing runflat tires

When changing from runflat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains an emergency wheel or tire mobility kit. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel change between axles

Warning

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

Storage

- ▷ Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- ▷ Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- ▷ Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- ▷ Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Runflat tires

Principle

Runflat tires permit continued driving under limited conditions even in the event of a complete tire pressure loss.

OwnersManuals2.com

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree and may also include special rims.

The reinforcement of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a limited degree in the event of a tire pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Identification

Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Tire repair set

Principle

With the tire repair set, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued driving.

General information

- The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- Follow the instructions on using the tire repair set found on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- The use of a tire repair set can be ineffective if the tire puncture measures above approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

OwnersManuals2.com

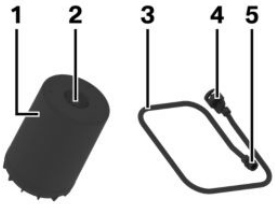
Overview

Storage

Depending on the equipment, storage for the tire repair set is provided as follows:

- ▷ In the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.
- ▷ In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- ▷ In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Sealant bottle
2 Sealant bottle outlet
3 Filler hose
4 Sealant bottle connection
5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor

1 Compressor
2 Tire pressure display
3 Pressure reducing valve button
4 Sealant bottle mount
5 Connector for socket
6 On/off switch

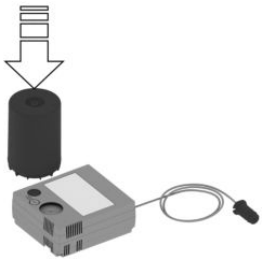
Safety precautions

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the compressor and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ Remove the warning label from the tire sealant bottle and attach it to the rim.

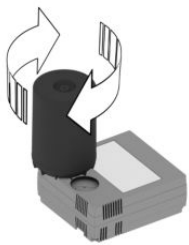
OwnersManuals2.com

Preparing the tire repair set

1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.

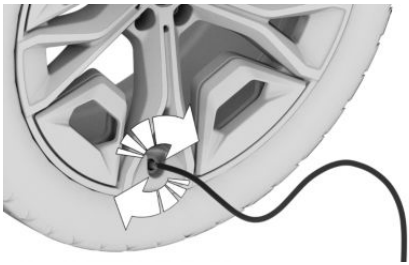


2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.

4. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the filler hose onto the valve.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

OwnersManuals2.com

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.

2. Switch off the compressor.

Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Unscrew the valve cap.
4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

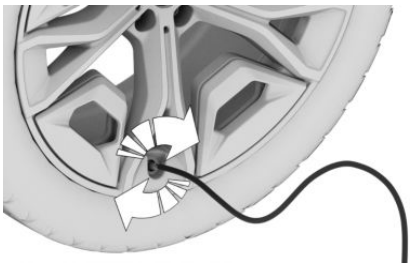
   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

   Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise by 90° until it audibly engages.

3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the connecting piece of the hose onto the valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

OwnersManuals2.com

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

6. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
   - ▷ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
   - ▷ Reduce tire pressure: press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Remove and stow the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Unscrew the valve cap.
5. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance travelled of 125 miles/200 km.

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle of the tire repair set promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 289.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 282.

System limits

If the tire cannot be made drivable, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With the Tire Pressure Monitor: using sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Snow chains

Safety information

Warning

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 225/50 R17.
- ▷ 255/40 R18.

OwnersManuals2.com

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the flat tire monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, activate the Dynamic Traction Control briefly to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or registered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 268.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- After each tire or wheel change, the system detects and updates the mounted tires on the control display and displays them after a short trip.

  Enter the information about the mounted tires in the tire settings when the system does not automatically detect the tires.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel change.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.

OwnersManuals2.com

- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The information about the mounted tires can be entered in the tire settings if the system does not automatically detect the tires.

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the control display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified nominal pressures take the influence of driving and outside temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

OwnersManuals2.com

The displayed nominal pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The nominal pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load status is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 283.
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive off.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed: "Resetting tire pressure...".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the control display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the

OwnersManuals2.com

vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 276.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 287.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

OwnersManuals2.com

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 276.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 287.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Using a sealing compound, for instance from the tire repair set, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Runflat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible distance traveled with a depressurized tire

The possible distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the control display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics such as an emergency wheel is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ Tire Pressure Monitor malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If the vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, the vehi-

OwnersManuals2.com

cle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. The vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on the vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 276.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

OwnersManuals2.com

Runflat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible distance traveled with a depressurized tire

The possible distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

OwnersManuals2.com

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using runflat tires or a tire repair set, the wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in the event of a breakdown when there is tire pressure loss.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

Warning

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

Warning

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of damage to property. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the wheel lock bolt.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the proper side of the wheels of both the front and rear axles to block the car from rolling downhill.

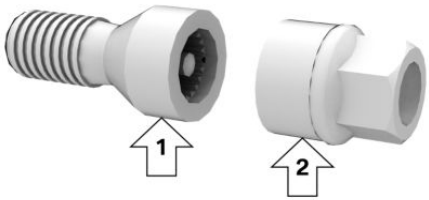
Lug bolt lock

Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

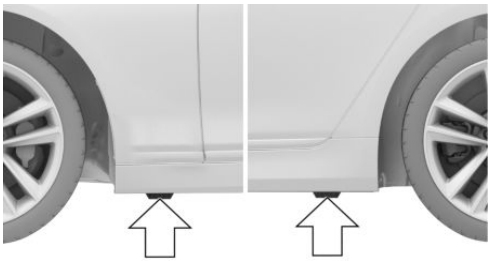
1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

OwnersManuals2.com

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points



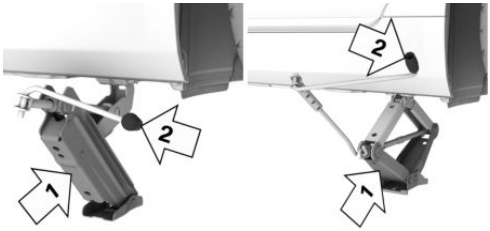
The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

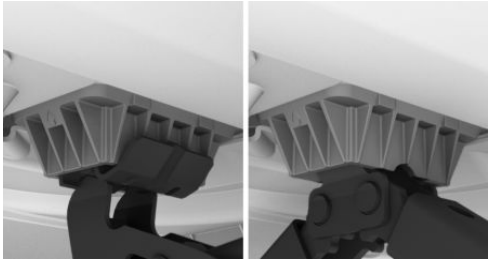
⚠ Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.

OwnersManuals2.com

4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.

6. Crank the vehicle up until the vehicle jack has the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the faulty tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive

OwnersManuals2.com

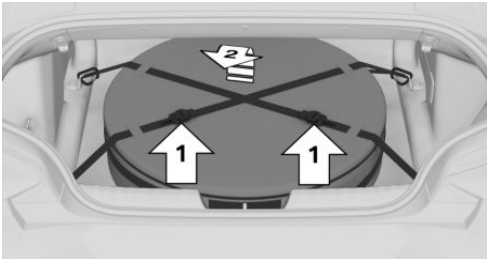
moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview

The emergency wheel and wheel change tools are located in a bag in the cargo area.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Slacken the luggage strap at the clasps, arrow 1.



2. Detach the snap hooks of the luggage straps at the lashing eyes.
3. Remove the bag with the emergency wheel and wheel change tools from the cargo area, arrow 2.
4. Open the bag, remove emergency wheel and wheel change tools.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Stow the emergency wheel and wheel change tools in the bag.
2. Place the bag into the cargo area.
3. Attach the snap hooks of the luggage straps at the lashing eyes.
4. Secure the luggage straps. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.

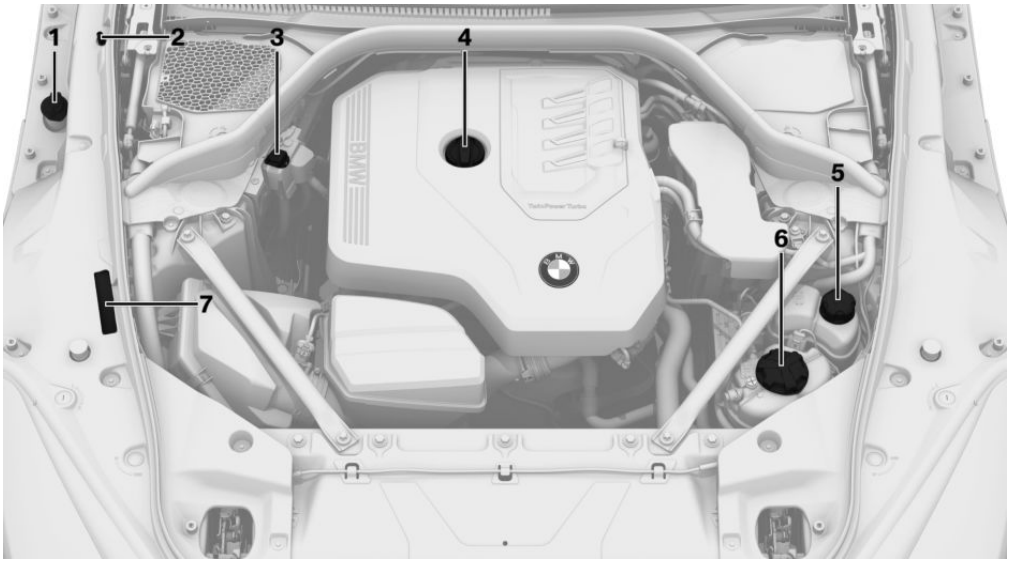
OwnersManuals2.com

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
3 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
4 Oil filler neck
5 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
6 Coolant reservoir, engine
7 Vehicle identification number

OwnersManuals2.com

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property.
The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear while opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

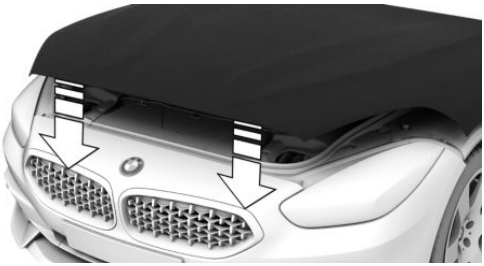
1. Pull lever, arrow 1. Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

OwnersManuals2.com

Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

OwnersManuals2.com

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fill up using fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, e.g., E10.

To achieve nominal values for mileage and consumption, follow the specified fuel quality in the sales literature.

When using minimum quality fuel like RON 91 or fuel with an ethanol content of more than 10 % to max. 25 %, knocking noises may occur and driving and acoustic performance may change. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

Warning

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

BMW recommends AKI 91.

M Performance model:

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idle operation of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages appear on the control display depending on the engine oil level.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Manual transmission: gearshift lever in idle position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

OwnersManuals2.com

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the control display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 297.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
   Opening, refer to page 298.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Too much water reduces the cooling and antifreeze properties of the coolant. There is a risk of damage to property. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and add the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant may be overfilled in the coolant reservoir when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. Run longer to achieve the normal coolant level.

The coolant level is indicated using the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

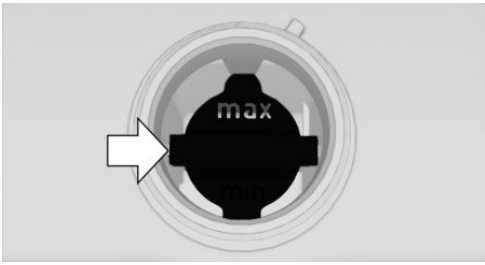
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 297.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 298.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the maximum mark in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 298.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All windshield washer jets are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield

OwnersManuals2.com

washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

OwnersManuals2.com

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the maintenance measures to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 154.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. An authorized service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

Have an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform time-dependent maintenance measures, e.g., checking the brake fluid, engine oil, and micro-filter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

OwnersManuals2.com

Diagnostic socket

General information

Devices connected to the diagnostic socket will trigger the alarm system after locking the vehicle.

Remove devices connected to the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

Additional information:

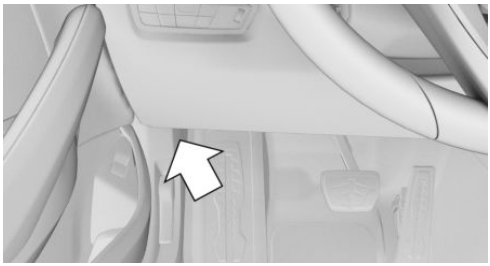
Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 146.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, it is strongly recommended that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is a diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

Emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  Worsening emissions, e.g., due to an incorrectly fitted fuel cap. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

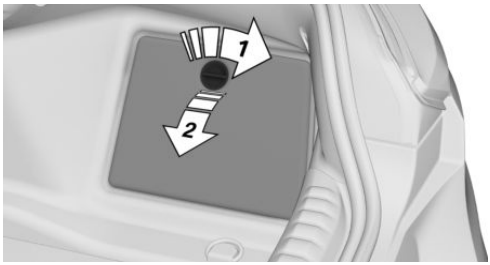
OwnersManuals2.com

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under a cover on the right side of the cargo area.

Unlock the cover of the right side trim panel, arrow 1, and fold open, arrow 2.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

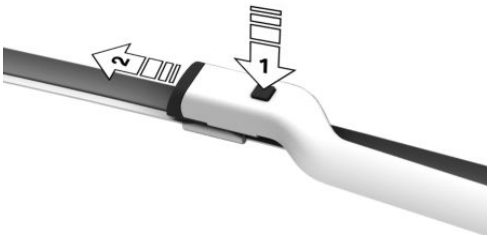
Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

   Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 131.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



OwnersManuals2.com

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform any necessary work.

Safety information

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work on the lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information on the battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with the vehicle type should be installed in the vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the battery to the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will

OwnersManuals2.com

be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- ▷ Frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 317.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ With Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Safety information

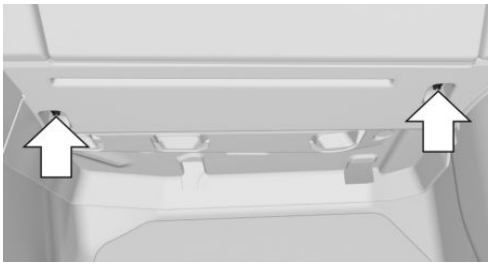
Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger footwell behind a cover.

OwnersManuals2.com

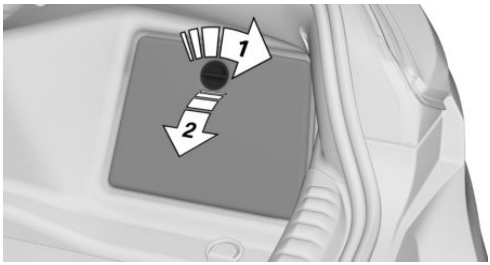


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Unlock the cover of the right side trim panel, arrow 1, and fold open, arrow 2.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse layout as well as the positions of other fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the event of a malfunction, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Breakdown Assistance

Vehicle features and options

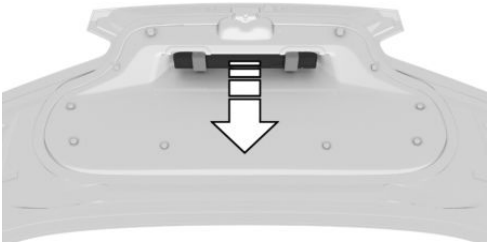
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

To remove, loosen the bracket.

First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

BMW Assistance

Principle

In the event of a breakdown, accident or if you have any questions about the vehicle, BMW Assist can be used to contact BMW Group's customer support.

OwnersManuals2.com

General information

The offering depends on the vehicle equipment and the national-market version.

For more information on this service, the vehicle manufacturer recommends contacting an authorized service center or the hotline/customer support.

Starting services

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "Call BMW Assist"
5. Follow the instructions on the control display.

A voice connection to customer support is being established.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 145.
- ▷ Via a call with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW app.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is first offered through Teleservice Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through Teleservice Help.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the control display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

OwnersManuals2.com

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not deploy any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is triggered, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 145.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Call

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an Assist system.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

OwnersManuals2.com

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

When certain prerequisites are met, for instance if the airbags deploy, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- ▷ The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted.

  If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

  The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

  Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

  For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

  Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED in the area of the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

An emergency call may be disrupted in the following circumstances, among others:

- ▷ Extended vehicle idle times.
- ▷ Intense sunlight on vehicle roof.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

Warning

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 297.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components such as the radio on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

OwnersManuals2.com

If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

When towing with Intelligent Safety systems enabled or Cruise Control switched on, individual functions may not work correctly. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety systems and Cruise Control before towing.

Manual transmission

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

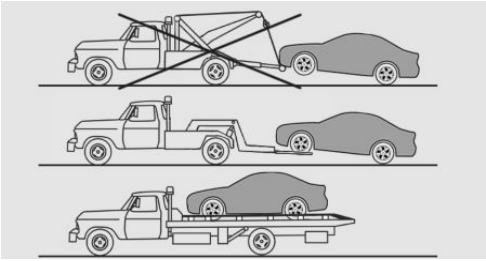
Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the standby state is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assistance. Consequently, more effort needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control handling.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 133.

Tow truck



The vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called spectacle lift or on a loading platform.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

Do not transport the vehicle by towing it.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

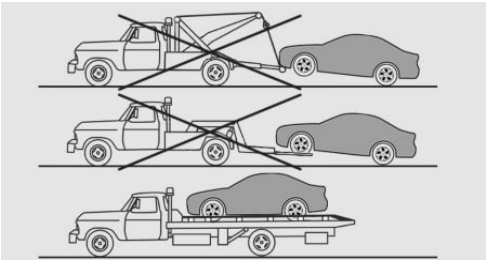
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazardous area, push it for a short distance at a speed of no more than 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 134.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control handling. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- ▷ Free movement is limited when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

OwnersManuals2.com

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the attachment of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

Observe the following notes when using the tow fitting:

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle.
- Turn the tow fitting at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- After use, unscrew the tow fitting counterclockwise.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the attachment of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 309.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 317.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign bodies such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals and lights: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance to convertible top: 20 inches/50 cm.

Automatic car washes or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Using a car wash with high pressure washers may result in water penetration of window areas. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive into high-pressure car wash systems.

OwnersManuals2.com

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- ▷ Do not treat the convertible top with wax. Ensure that a cycle without wax or a special convertible program is available to avoid damage to the convertible top.

Driving into a car wash with a manual transmission

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

To roll or push the vehicle, refer to page 133.

Driving into a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 134.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 39.

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking effect can be reduced. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle paintwork. Align the frequency and extent of vehicle care according to the degree of soiling.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Care of convertible top

General information

The appearance and service life of the convertible top depend on correct vehicle care and operation.

Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Clean headliner with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.
- ▷ Do not soak the headliner.
- ▷ To avoid water stains, spots of mold, and chafe marks, do not keep the convertible top enclosed in the convertible top compartment for a long period of time. Do not fold up the convertible top or stow it in the convertible top compartment if it is wet or frozen.
- ▷ Remove any water stains that have appeared on the headliner using a microfiber cloth and an interior cleaner.
- ▷ When the vehicle is parked in enclosed areas for lengthy stationary periods, ensure that the area is well ventilated.
- ▷ Park the vehicle in the shade to protect it from intensive sunlight so that color, rubber, and fabric are not affected.
- ▷ Remove bird droppings immediately as their corrosive effect will otherwise attack the convertible top and damage the rubber seals.
- ▷ Hard to remove tree sap or bird droppings can be removed from the convertible top with special tree sap remover and a soft brush.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety information

NOTICE

Spot remover, paint thinner, solvents, gasoline or similar can damage the convertible top or the rubber seals. There is a risk of damage to property. To remove spots on the convertible top, use only suitable cleaning agents, for instance special convertible top cleaning agent.

Cleaning the convertible top

To remove heavy contamination, especially for light colored convertible tops, use a special convertible top cleaning agent.

Proceed as follows when cleaning:

1. Spray the convertible top with the convertible top cleaning agent. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make the convertible top cleaning agent foam up using a well saturated sponge, moving it in circular motions.
3. Rinse vehicle with ample amounts of water or finish washing the vehicle in the car wash. Follow notes regarding automatic car washes.

Treat the convertible top with an impregnating agent after it has been washed three to five times.

Suitable cleaners and vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Leather care

Particles of dust and road grime rub into pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

To guard against discoloration such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances such as sunscreen to prevent the synthetic leather from being altered or discolored.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers and other cloth upholstery in the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam cleaners above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective coating of adjacent components such as the brake disk.

After cleaning, apply the brakes shortly to dry them. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components solely with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the headliner.

Seat belts

Warning

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

OwnersManuals2.com

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, operating elements and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. Physical damage to the material is possible.

- ▷ Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in the vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

BMW Z4 Roadster		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	79.7/2,024
Width without mirrors	in/mm	73.4/1,864
Height	in/mm	51.4/1,306
Length	in/mm	170.7/4,337
Wheelbase	in/mm	97.2/2,470
Turning radius diameter	ft/m	36.1/11.0

OwnersManuals2.com

Weights

BMW Z4 sDrive 30i		
Permissible gross weight	lbs/kg	3,880/1,760
Payload	lbs/kg	459/208
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	1,852/840
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,105/955

BMW Z4 M40i		
Permissible gross weight	lbs/kg	4,101/1,860
Payload	lbs/kg	538/244
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	1,940/880
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,216/1,005

Filling capacities

BMW Z4 Roadster		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	13.7/52.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 300.

OwnersManuals2.com

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: Indicator and warning lights: Red lights: Forward Collision Warning with braking function.
- Operation: Indicator and warning lights: Red lights: Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation.
- Operation: safety: Forward Collision Warning with braking function.
- Operation: safety: Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation.
- Driving tips: Take into account while driving: General driving notes: Closing the trunk lid / Closing the tailgate / Closing the rear window and tailgate: Safety instructions: Driving with the trunk lid / tailgate / rear window closed.

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 187
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 137
Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 143
Accessories and parts 9
Accident Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance 315
ACC, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 198
Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 226
Activation word 51
Active Blind Spot Detection 181
Active Cruise Control 198
Active damping control, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 171
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 171
Active M Sport differential 190
Active Park Distance Control 210
Adaptive lighting functions 163
Adaptive M suspension 225
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Experience Control 140
Adding engine oil types 303
Additives, engine oil types 303
Adjusting contents, iDrive 47
Airbags 168
Airbags, warning light 170
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 228, 233
Air conditioning, climate 231
Air distribution, manual 229, 234
Air drying, see air conditioning 231
Air flow, automatic climate control 229, 233
Air outlets, see Ventilation 235
Air pressure, tires 268
Air quality 226
Air vent, see Ventilation 235
Alarm, avoiding 99
Alarm system 98
All-season tires, see Winter tires 276
All-season tires, tread 273
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 54
Ambient light 166
Android Auto, connection to vehicle 76
Android Auto, smartphone integration 76
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 305
Antilock Braking System 187
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 293
Apple CarPlay, connection to vehicle 75
Apple CarPlay, smartphone integration 75
Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Aquaplaning 257
Assistance, BMW 313
Assistance driving out of parking space 219
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 187
Assistance with breakdown 313
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Authorized service center, see BMW Accident Assistance 315
Authorized service center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 314
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 126
Automatic activation, see Climate control rules 117
Automatic climate control 226, 230
Automatic control, headlight 161
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 114
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 170
Automatic dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 164
Automatic headlight control 161
Automatic High Beam Assistant 164
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 126
Automatic locking 97
Automatic Parking Assistant 214

OwnersManuals2.com

Automatic Parking Assistant, driving out of parking space 219
Automatic program, automatic climate control 228, 232
Automatic Recirculating Air Control 233
Automatic time setting 60
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Automatic unlocking 97
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
AUTO program, automatic climate control 228, 232
AUTO program, intensity 232
Auto Start/Stop function 122
Average consumption 143, 144
Average consumption, see Trip data 156
Axle loads, approved 329

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 110
Backrest, seats 108
Backrest tilt 109
Backrest width 110
Back-up Assistant 220
Bandages, see First-aid kit 313
Bar for tow-starting/towing 319
Battery, disposing of 311
Battery, vehicle 310
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 318
Belts, see Seat belts 110
Blind spot collision warning 181
Blower, see Air flow 229, 233
Bluetooth connection 73
Blu-ray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 315
BMW Assist 313
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW Digital Key 86
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
BMW maintenance system 307
BMW Roadside Assistance 314
Bonus range, ECO PRO 263
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 250
Brake assistant 187
Brake disks, see Brake system 256
Brake pads, see Brake system 256
Brake system 256
Braking, information 258
Breakdown assistance 313
Break-in 256
Break-in procedures 256
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 185
Brightness, control display 62
Button, central locking system 90
Buttons on the steering wheel 30
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 315
Button, Start/Stop 122
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 317

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 319
Calibration of the front seats 109
California Proposition 65 Warning 9
Camera-based driver assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 171
Camera lenses, care 326
Camera, rearview camera 212
Cameras, see Vehicle sensors 35
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 198
CANCEL button, Cruise Control 195
Can holder, front, see Cup holder, front 250
Care 321
Care, displays, screens 326
Care, Head-up display 326
Care, light-alloy wheels 325
Care, vehicle 323
Cargo 252
Cargo area 252
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 253
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Car key, see Vehicle key 79
Carpet, care 326
CarPlay 75
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 118
Car wash 321

OwnersManuals2.com

Car wash, automatic 321
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 257
CBS, see Condition Based Service 307
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest 249
Center console 32
Central Information Display (CID), see Control display 45
Central locking switch, see Central locking system 90
Central locking system 90
Central screen, see Control display 45
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Change, wheels and tires 274
Changing parts 309
Changing wheels 292
Charging cradle 245
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 245
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 245
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Check Control 145
Checking the engine oil level electronically 302
Children, seating position 118
Children, transporting safely 118
Child restraint seats 118
Child restraint systems, mounting 119
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 118
Child seat installation 119
Child seat, mounting 119
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 118
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 325
Chrome surfaces, care 325
Cleaning, see Care 323
Climate control 226
Climate control rules 117
Closing with the Key Card 84
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 86
Coasting 263
Coasting with idling engine 263
Comfort Access 91
COMFORT, see Driving Experience Control 138
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 295
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 43
Compartments in the doors 249
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compatible mobile phones 71
Compressor 278
Concierge Service, see BMW Assist 313
Condensation on the window surfaces 229, 234
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 259
Condensation, windshield 229, 234
Condition Based Service 307
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
ConnectedDrive services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 243
Consumption display, average consumption 143, 144
Consumption display, current consumption 143, 144
Consumption display, ECO PRO 263
Consumption, see Trip data 156
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continued driving with a flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Continued driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 289
Control display 45
Controller 46
Control systems, driving stability 187
Convenient closing, vehicle key 81
Convenient opening, vehicle key 80
Convertible, convertible top 101
Convertible, roof 101
Convertible top 101
Convertible top, emergency operation 103

OwnersManuals2.com

Convertible, wind deflector 106
Coolant 304
Coolant level 305
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 153
Cooling, maximum 228, 232
Cooling system 304
Cornering light 164
Corrosion, brake disks 259
Cosmetic mirror 243
Cross Traffic Warning 222
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 198
Cruise Control with Distance Control 198
Cruise Control without Distance Control 195
Cruising range 154
Cup holder, front 250
Current consumption 143, 144
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Customer Support 6

D

Damage, tires 274
Damping control, active, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Dashboard 30
Dashboard, see Instrument cluster 141
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 64
Data, see Personal data, deleting 64
Data, technical 328
Date 60
Day, see Date 60
Daytime driving lights 163
Daytime running lights 163
DCC, see Cruise Control without Distance Control 195
Defrosting, windshield 229, 234
Deleting, personal data 64
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 235
Departure time, pre-conditioning 238
Departure time, pre-ventilation 236
Destination input 6
Device, connecting 70
Device list 71
Device, registering 70
Devices, managing 71
Devices, suitable 71
Diagnostic connection 308
Diagnostic socket 308
Differential lock 190
Digital Key 86
Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key 86
Dimensions 328
Dimmable interior mirror 114
Dimming exterior mirror 114
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 44
Display, iDrive 42
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 165
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 63
Display panel, see Instrument cluster 141
Displays 141
Displays and icons 7
Displays, ECO PRO 261
Display speed limit, see Speed Limit Info 191
Disposal, coolant 305
Disposal, vehicle battery 311
Distance Control, see Cruise Control 198
Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control 207
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 162
Drive-off assistant 187
Drive-off assistant, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Drive power, reduced 152
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 171
Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 207
Driver Assistance, see Intelligent Safety 171
Driver assistance systems 191
Drive-ready state, see Operating condition of the vehicle 38
Driver profiles 65
Driver profile, setup 65
Driver profiles, welcome screen 65
Driving 122
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 171

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving comfort 225
Driving Experience Control 138
Driving mode, ECO PRO 261
Driving mode, see Driving Experience Control 138
Driving notes 256
Driving out of parking space 219
Driving stability control systems 187
Driving, Start/Stop button 122
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 265
Driving through water 258
Driving tips, see General driving notes 257
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Dynamic Cruise Control, see Cruise Control 195
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Dynamic Stability Control 188
Dynamic Traction Control 189

E

ECO PRO 261
ECO PRO, bonus range 263
ECO PRO, driving style analysis 265
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control 138
ECO PRO, see Driving Experience Control 138
Electronic oil measurement 302
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Emergency braking, see PostCrash – iBrake 184
Emergency call 315
Emergency operation, convertible top 103
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 267
Emergency release, transmission lock 137
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 95
Emergency wheel 295
Energy recovery 143, 144
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 155
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 122
Engine compartment 297
Engine coolant 304
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 263
Engine oil filler neck 303
Engine oil temperature 153
Engine oil, topping up 303
Engine oil types to add 303
Engine sound, setting 225
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 39
Engine start, see Jump-starting 317
Engine stopping, see Drive-ready state 39
Engine temperature 153
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 155
Entry comparison 43
Equipment, interior 240
Error indicators, see Check Control 145
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Exchange, wheels and tires 274
Exhaust gas system 257
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 257
Exterior lighting during unlocking 80
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle 81
Exterior mirror 113
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Exterior mirror cameras, see Vehicle sensors 35
External start, see Jump-starting 317
Eyelet for towing 320
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 253

F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 62
Failure message, see Check Control 145
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 110
Fatigue Alert 185
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert 185
Fault indicators, see Check Control 145
Filler neck for engine oil 303
Filter, see Interior filter 226
Fine wood parts, care 325
First-aid kit 313

OwnersManuals2.com

First Steps, see Setup Wizard 65
Flat tire, changing wheels 292
Flat tire, continued driving, see Flat tire monitor 289
Flat tire, continued driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Flat tire message, see Flat tire monitor 290
Flat tire message, see Tire Pressure Monitor 285
Flat tire monitor 289
Flat tire, repairing 277
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 289
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 290
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 285
Floods, driving through 258
Floor carpet, care 326
Floor mats, care 326
Fold-away position, wiper 131
Fold-out position 131
Foot brake 258
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Forward Collision Warning 173
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 171
Forward Collision Mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 176
Forward Collision Warning with braking function 173
Forward Collision Warning with city braking function 173
For Your Own Safety 8
Front airbags 168
Front camera, see Vehicle sensors 35
Front fog lights, changing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 170
Front radar sensor, see Vehicle sensors 35
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 171
Front seats 108
Fuel 300
Fuel filler cap 266
Fuel filler flap 266
Fuel gauge 150
Fuel quality 300
Fuel recommendation 300
Fuel, saving 260
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 329
Fuses 311

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 240
Gasoline 300
Gasoline quality 301
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 133
gearshift 132
General driving notes 257
General settings 60
Glare shield, see Sun visor 243
Glove compartment 249
G-Meter 143
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 329

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 126
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 241
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 313
Headlight control, automatic 161
Headlight flasher 129
Headlight glass 310
Headlights, care 322
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 164
Headliner 33
Head restraints and seats 108

OwnersManuals2.com

Head restraints, front 112
Head-up display 158
Head-up display, care 326
Head-up display, position, saving see Memory function 115
Heated steering wheel 115
Heated steering wheel, climate control rules 117
Heavy cargo, stowing 253
Height, vehicle 328
High beams 129
Hills 258
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 187
Holder for beverages, front 250
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 240
Homepage, see Internet 7
Hood 298
Horn 30
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 95
Hot exhaust gas system 257
Hour, see Time 60

I

iBrake – PostCrash 184
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 153
Icons and displays 7
Identification marks, tires 271
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 13
iDrive 42
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 79
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 79
Inclination 109
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 171
Indicator lights 146
Individual air distribution 229, 234
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 65
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 245
Information 6
Information window, control display 62
Initialization, see flat tire monitor 290
Input, iDrive 42
Installation of child restraint systems 119
Instrument cluster 141
Instrument lighting 165
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster 141
Integrated key 89
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 6
Integrated Universal Remote Control 240
Intelligent emergency call 315
Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
Intelligent Safety 171
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 232
Interior equipment 240
Interior filter 226
Interior lights 166
Interior lights during unlocking 80
Interior lights, locked vehicle 81
Interior mirror 114
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 114
Interior motion sensor 99
Internet page 7
Interval indicator, see Service notification 154

J

Jacking points 294
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 294
Jam protection system, windows 101
Journey data 156
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 133
Jump-starting 317
Jump-starting terminals 317
Jump-start terminals 317

K

Kenaf, care 325
Key Card 84
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 91
Key, mechanical 89
Key, see Vehicle key 79
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 133
Knee airbag 168

L

Labeling 271
Lane boundary 178

OwnersManuals2.com

Lane departure warning 178
Lane threshold, warning 178
Language, setting 61
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 253
Launch Control 137
Leather care 324
LED headlights, changing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Length, vehicle 328
Letters and numbers, entering 43
Light-alloy wheels, care 325
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 181
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 222
Lighting 161
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 310
Lights 161
Lights and bulbs 310
Lights, care 322
Light switch 161
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 193
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 155
List, notifications, see Notifications 62
Load 253
Loading 252
Loading the cargo area, see Cargo 252
Local time, see Time 60
Locking, see Opening and Closing 79
Locking, settings 96
Locking using the vehicle key 81
Lock, lug bolts 293
Loop 320
Low beams 162
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 110
Lug bolt lock 293
Luggage straps 253
Lumbar support 110

M

Maintenance 307
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 307
Maintenance, see Service notification 154
Maintenance system, BMW 307
Make-up mirror 243
Malfunction, vehicle key 83
Manual brake, see Parking brake 126
Manually closing the convertible top 103
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 133
Manual Speed Limiter 193
Manual transmission 132
Manual transmission, see Manual transmission 132
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 276
Matte paintwork 323
Matt paint, care 323
Maximum cooling 228, 232
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 191
Maximum speed, winter tires 276
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 313
Memory function 115
Menus, operating, iDrive 42
Messages, see Check Control 145
Meters, see Instrument cluster 141
Microfilter, see Interior filter 226
Minimum tread depth, tires 273
Minute, see Time 60
Mirror position, saving, see Memory function 115
Mobile devices, connecting 70
Mobile devices, managing 71
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile phones, suitable 71
Mobile radio in the vehicle 257
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 315
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 314
Mobility System, see Tire repair set 277
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 198
Mode, ECO PRO 261
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass 310
Monitor, see Control display 45

OwnersManuals2.com

Mounting of child restraint systems 119
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Sport differential 190
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Multi-function steering wheel 30
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 30
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 112
Net, cargo area 253
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 325
Notifications 62
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 319

O

OBD, see On-board diagnosis 308
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 213
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 301
Odometer, see Trip data 156
Oil filler neck 303
Oil level, checking electronically 302
Oil service interval, see Service notification 154
Oil, topping up 303
Oil types to add, engine 303
Old battery 311
On-board computer, see Trip data 156
On-board diagnosis 308
Onboard toolkit 309
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 315
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 314
One-touch signaling 129
Opening and closing 79
Opening with the Key Card 84
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 86
Operating concept, iDrive 42
Operating condition of the vehicle 38
Operation via voice 50
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Outside air, see Automatic Recirculating Air Control 233
Outside temperature 153
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 153
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 326
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52

P

Paint, vehicle care 323
Paintwork 323
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 99
Panic mode 99
Park Distance Control 207
Park Distance Control Side without Surround View 211
Parking assistance systems 207
Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems 207
Parking Assistant, see Automatic Parking Assistant 214
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control 207
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems 207
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 126
Parking brake 126
Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control 210
Parking lights 162
Parts and accessories 9
Pathway lighting 163
Pathway lighting, turning on 82
Pathway lines, rearview camera 213
Payload 253
Payload, technical data 329

OwnersManuals2.com

PDC, see Park Distance Control 207
Pedestrian Warning with brake function 176
Performance display, see Sport displays 157
Personal Assistant 50
Personal data, deleting 64
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 65
Personal settings 64
Physical units, see Units of measurement, setting 61
Plastic parts, care 325
Pop-up 62
PostCrash – iBrake 184
Power Display, instrument cluster 151
Power failure 311
Power interruption 311
Power Meter, see Power Display 151
Power windows 100
Pre-conditioning 237
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Pressure, tires 268
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 289
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Pre-ventilation 235
Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-end collision preparation 183
Profiles, see Driver profiles 65
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 44
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 101
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 46

R

Racing track 259
Radar sensors, see Vehicle sensors 35
Radiator fluid 304
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 130
Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rear-end collision preparation 183
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Rearview camera 212
Rearview camera, see Vehicle sensors 35
Rear-view mirror, exterior 113
Rearview mirror, interior 114
Rear window defroster 229, 234
Recirculated-air mode 228, 233
Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter 226
Recommended tire brands 275
Reduced drive power 152
Refueling 266
Registering, mobile devices, see Connections 70
Release fuel filler flap, manual 267
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 79
Remote control, universal 240
Remote Engine Start, see Stationary climate control 237
Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 56
Renewal, wheels and tires 274
Replacement, wheels and tires 274
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 310
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 310
Replacing parts 309
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 82
Reporting safety malfunctions 14
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control 198
RES CNCL button, Cruise Control 195
Reserve warning, see Range 154
Reservoir, washer fluid 305
Resetting, vehicle data 62
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 284
Reset, vehicle settings 62
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 86
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 198
RESUME button, Cruise Control 195
Retreaded tires 275
Reversing Assistant 220
Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance 314
Roadside parking lights 162

OwnersManuals2.com

Rolling code hand-held transmitter 241
Rolling to a stop with engine decoupled, see Coasting 263
RON, see gasoline quality 301
Roofliner 33
Roof, see Convertible top 101
Rope for tow-starting/towing 319
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC, see Runflat tires 276
Rubber components, care 325
Runflat tires 276
Runflat tires, see Runflat tires 276

S

Safe braking 258
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 86
Safety systems, see Airbags 168
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 171
Screen, see Control display 45
Sealing compound, see Tire repair set 277
Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat, see Seat belts 112
Seat belt reminder for the rear seats 112
Seat belts 110
Seat belts, care 325
Seat calibration 109
Seat heating 116
Seat heating, climate control rules 117
Seating position for children 118
Seat position, saving, see Memory function 115
Seats and head restraints 108
Seats, front 108
Securing, cargo 253
Securing the trunk lid, see Valet parking mode 95
Selection list on the instrument cluster 155
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 133
Sensors, care 326
Service and warranty 10
Service notification 154
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 307
SET button, Active Cruise Control 198
SET button, Cruise Control 195
Settings, general 60
Setting the time, see Time 60
Setup Wizard 65
Shift lights 152
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 133
Shift point display 155
Shift point indicator, tachometer 152
Shift recommendation for fuel-efficient driving, see Shift point display 155
Side airbag 168
Side protection without Surround View, see Park Distance Control Side 211
Signaling, horn 30
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals 97
Sitting safely 108
Sleep mode, see Operating condition of the vehicle 38
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 153
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 153
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 328
Smartphone, connecting 70
Smartphone integration, Android Auto 76
Smartphone integration, Apple CarPlay 75
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 53
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snow chains 281
Sockets, electrical devices 243
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 56
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 56
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 315
Sound, engine, setting 225
Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 295
Speed control, see Cruise Control 195
Speed Limit Assist 205
Speed Limit Assistant 205
Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter 193
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 191

OwnersManuals2.com

Speed Limit Info 191
Speed warning 61
Sport differential 190
Sport displays 157
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control 138
SPORT PLUS, see Driving Experience Control 138
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 133
SPORT, see Driving Experience Control 138
Sport steering, variable 190
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Stability control systems 187
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Standby, see Operating condition of the vehicle 38
Start/stop, automatic function 122
Start/Stop button 122
Starting aid terminals 317
Starting, see Drive-ready state 39
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 39
Starting the engine with the Key Card 84
Stationary climate control via Remote Engine Start 237
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 284
Status information, iDrive 43
Status of Owner's Manual 8
Status, vehicle 158
Steering column adjustment 115
Steering wheel, adjusting 115
Steering wheel, buttons 30
Steering wheel heating 115
Steering wheel heating, climate control rules 117
Steering wheel position, saving, see Memory function 115
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Steptronic transmission 133
Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 39
Storage compartment, center console 249
Storage compartments 248
Storage compartments, locations 248
Storage, tires 276
Storing the vehicle 326
Stowage, cargo 253
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 253
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 273
Sun visor 243
Supplementary Owner's Handbooks 7
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 7
Suspension settings, see Driving Experience Control 138
Switches, see Dashboard 30
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Experience Control 138
SYNC program, automatic climate control 234
System language, setting, see Language, setting 61
System settings, see General settings 60

T

Tachometer 151
Tail light, changing, see Lights and bulbs 310
Taking the vehicle out of service 326
Tank volume 329
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 328
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 155
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 227, 231
Temperature display, see outside temperature 153
Temperature, engine oil 153
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 98
Thigh support 110
Through-loading system 254
Tilt alarm sensor 99
Tilt, backrest 109

OwnersManuals2.com

Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Time 60
Time of day, see Time 60
Time setting, automatic 60
Tire brands, recommendation 275
Tire change 274
Tire damage 274
Tire identification marks 271
Tire inflation pressure 268
Tire marking 271
Tire pressure 268
Tire Pressure Monitor 282
Tire pressure monitoring, see Flat tire monitor 289
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 284
Tire pressure, tires 268
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 289
Tire repair set 277
Tires and wheels 268
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set 277
Tire settings 283
Tires, run-flat 276
Tire tread 273
Tools 309
Torque display, see Sport displays 157
Touchpad, Controller 48
Tow bar 319
Tow fitting 320
Towing 318
Tow rope 319
Tow-starting 318
Traction Control 189
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
TRACTION, driving dynamics 189
Traction, see Dynamic Traction Control 189
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission, manual transmission 132
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Transporting children safely 118
Tread, tires 273
Trip data 156
Trip odometer, see Trip data 156
Trunk, emergency unlocking 95
Trunk lid 93
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 95
Trunk lid, operating, vehicle key 82
Trunk lid, see Trunk lid 93
Trunk, see Cargo area 252
Turn indicators, see Turn signals 129
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 213
Turning circle, vehicle 328
Turn signal, indicator light 148
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 310
Turn signals 129

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Vehicle sensors 35
Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding 99
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 99
Units of measurement, setting 61
Units, see Units of measurement, setting 61
Universal remote control 240
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 133
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 79
Unlocking, settings 96
Unlocking the transmission lock, electronic 137
Unlocking, vehicle key 80
Updates made after the editorial deadline 8
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 56
Upholstery material care 324
Upper retaining strap, top tether 120
USB connection 77
USB port, position in vehicle 244
Used battery, disposing of 311
Use, intended 8

V

Valet parking mode 95
Vanity mirror 243
Variable sport steering 190
Vehicle battery 310
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 313
Vehicle care 323

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle care products 323
Vehicle data, resetting 62
Vehicle equipment 8
Vehicle identification number 13
Vehicle issues 313
Vehicle key 79
Vehicle key, additional 83
Vehicle key, loss 83
Vehicle paint, care 323
Vehicle paintwork 323
Vehicle sensors 35
Vehicle status 158
Vehicle storage 326
Ventilation 235
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 235
Venting, see Ventilation 235
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 56
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 13
Voice activation system 50
Voice control 50
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
Voice recognition 50
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Wake word 51
Warning for crossing traffic 222
Warning function, rear-end collision 183
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 181
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 222
Warning lights 146
Warning messages, see Check Control 145
Warning triangle 313
Warranty 8
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 8
Washer fluid 305
Washer nozzles, windshield 131
Washing the vehicle 321
Washing, vehicle 321
Water on roads 258
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 259
Website, see Internet 7
Weights 329
Welcome light during unlocking 80
Welcome lights 162
Welcome screen, driver profiles 65
Wheelbase 328
Wheel base, vehicle 328
Wheel change 292
Wheels and tires 268
Wheels and tires, exchange 274
Widgets, iDrive 43
Widgets, instrument cluster 142, 143
Width, vehicle 328
Wi-Fi 74
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 74
Wi-Fi hotspot 74
Wi-Fi hotspot, see Wi-Fi hotspot 74
WiFi, see Wi-Fi 74
Wind deflector 106
Window, defrosting 229, 234
Window fogging 229, 234
Windows, powered 100
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system 129
Windshield, defrosting 229, 234
Windshield, removing condensation 229, 234
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 305
Windshield washer nozzles 131
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 129
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 326
Winter tires 276
Winter tires, tread 273
Wiper blades, changing 309
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 305
Wiper, fold-away position 131
Wipers, see Wiper system 129
Wiper system 129
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 245
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 245
WLAN connection 74

OwnersManuals2.com

Wood parts, care 325
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 43
Workshop, see Service notification 154

OwnersManuals2.com

01405A88B63 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

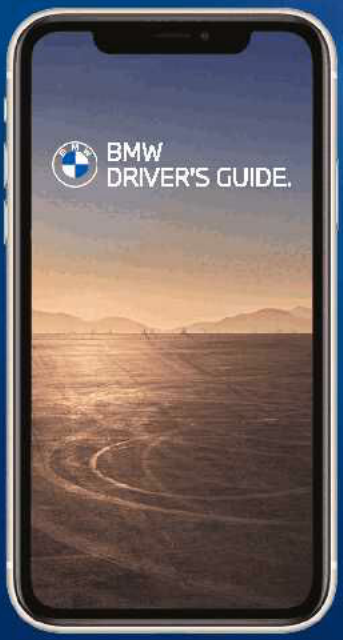
Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



- All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be used offline after download

01405A88B63 ue

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A88B63 - VI/23

OwnersManuals2.com